OXFORD

Starter

# American English File

fourth edition

Student Book

Christina Latham-Koenig
Clive Oxenden  Kate Chomacki
Jerry Lambert

OXFORD IMPACT EVALUATED

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Starter

# American English File

fourth edition

Student Book

How to use your e-book

Christina Latham-Koenig  Clive Oxenden
Kate Chomacki  Jerry Lambert

MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

# Contents


| | | GRAMMAR | VOCABULARY | PRONUNCIATION | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | | | | | **Practical English** p.10 |
| 6 | **A Nice to meet you** | verb *be* (singular): *I* and *you* | numbers 0–10, days of the week, saying goodbye | /h/, /aɪ/, and /i/ | **Episode 1** *How do you spell it?* **Practical English** checking into a hotel, booking a table **Vocabulary** the classroom **Pronunciation** the alphabet |
| 8 | **B Music around the world** | verb *be* (singular): *he*, *she*, *it* | countries | /ɪ/, /oʊ/, /s/, and /ʃ/ | |
| **2** | | | | | **Review and Check** p.16 |
| 12 | **A Are you on vacation?** | verb *be* (plural): *we*, *you*, *they* | nationalities | /dʒ/, /tʃ/, and /ʃ/ | Review and Check 1&2 |
| 14 | **B What number is the bus?** | *Wh-* and *How* questions with *be* | phone numbers, numbers 11–100 | understanding numbers | |
| **3** | | | | | **Practical English** p.22 |
| 18 | **A Where's my phone?** | singular and plural nouns, *a* / *an* | small things | /z/ and /s/, plural endings | **Episode 2** *An orange juice, please* **Practical English** understanding prices, buying lunch **Pronunciation** /ʊr/, /s/, and /k/ |
| 20 | **B Souvenirs** | *this* / *that* / *these* / *those* | souvenirs | /ð/, sentence rhythm | |
| **4** | | | | | **Review and Check** p.28 |
| 24 | **A This is my family** | possessive adjectives, possessive *'s* | people and family | /ʌ/, /æ/, and /ə/ | Review and Check 3&4 |
| 26 | **B The right car for me** | adjectives | colors and common adjectives | /ɑr/ and /ɔr/, linking | |
| **5** | | | | | **Practical English** p.34 |
| 30 | **A My favorite meal** | simple present + and −: *I*, *you*, *we*, *they* | food and drink | /dʒ/ and /g/ | **Episode 3** *What time is it?* **Practical English** telling the time **Vocabulary** the time, saying how you feel **Pronunciation** /ɑ/, silent consonants |
| 32 | **B A very long flight** | simple present ?: *I*, *you*, *we*, *they* | common verb phrases 1 | /w/ and /v/, sentence rhythm and linking | |
| **6** | | | | | **Review and Check** p.40 |
| 36 | **A Old friends?** | simple present: *he*, *she*, *it* | jobs and places of work | third person *-es*, sentence rhythm | Review and Check 5&6 |
| 38 | **B Good morning, good night** | adverbs of frequency | a typical day | /y/ and /yu/, sentence rhythm | |

78 **Communication** 86 **Writing Bank** 88 **Listening** 92 **Grammar Bank** 116 **Vocabulary Bank**

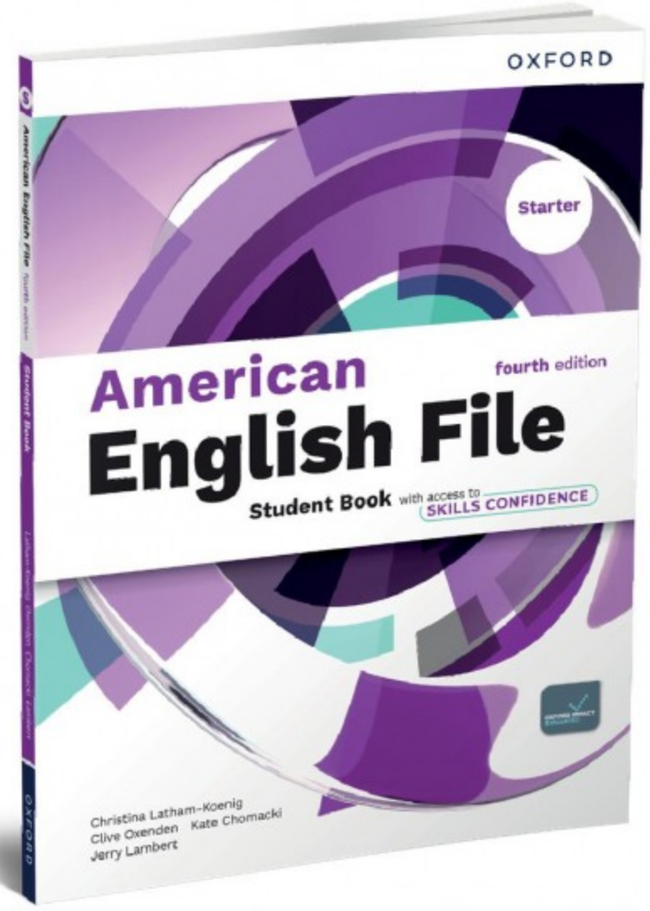



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

| | | GRAMMAR | VOCABULARY | PRONUNCIATION | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **7** | | | | | **Practical English** p.46 |
| 42 | **A On the weekend** | word order in questions: *be* and simple present | common verb phrases 2: free time | /w/, /h/, /ɛr/, and /aʊ/ | **Episode 4** *What's the date?* **Practical English** saying the date, talking on the phone **Vocabulary** months, ordinal numbers **Pronunciation** /θ/ |
| 44 | **B Lights, camera, action!** | imperatives, object pronouns: *me*, *him*, etc. | kinds of movies | sentence rhythm | |
| **8** | | | | | **Review and Check** p.52 |
| 48 | **A Can I park here?** | *can* / *can't* | more verb phrases | *can* / *can't*: /ə/ and /æ/, sentence rhythm | Review and Check 7&8 |
| 50 | **B I ♥ shopping** | *like* / *love* / *hate* + verb + *-ing* | activities | /ʊ/, /u/, and /ŋ/, sentence rhythm | |
| **9** | | | | | **Practical English** p.58 |
| 54 | **A What are they *really* doing?** | present continuous | common verb phrases 2: traveling | sentence rhythm | **Episode 5** *Would you like to come?* **Practical English** inviting and offering **Pronunciation** sentence rhythm |
| 56 | **B Watching and waiting** | present continuous or simple present? | clothes | /ər/, other vowel sounds | |
| **10** | | | | | **Review and Check** p.64 |
| 60 | **A A room with a view** | *there's a... / there are some...* | hotels; *in*, *on*, *under* | /ɪr/ and /ɛr/ | Review and Check 9&10 |
| 62 | **B Where was he?** | simple past: *be* | *in*, *on*, *at* | *was* and *were*, sentence rhythm | |
| **11** | | | | | **Practical English** p.70 |
| 66 | **A A new life in the US** | simple past: regular verbs | regular verbs | regular simple past endings | **Episode 6** *Is there a bank near here?* **Practical English** asking for and giving directions **Vocabulary** prepositions of place **Pronunciation** sentence rhythm and polite intonation |
| 68 | **B How was your day?** | simple past irregular verbs: *get*, *go*, *have*, *do* | verb phrases with *get*, *go*, *have*, *do* | sentence rhythm | |
| **12** | | | | | **Review and Check** p.76 |
| 72 | **A Strangers on a train** | simple past: regular and irregular verbs | regular and irregular verbs | irregular verbs | Review and Check 11&12 |
| 74 | **B Review the past** | simple past review | review of past verb forms | review of vowel sounds | |
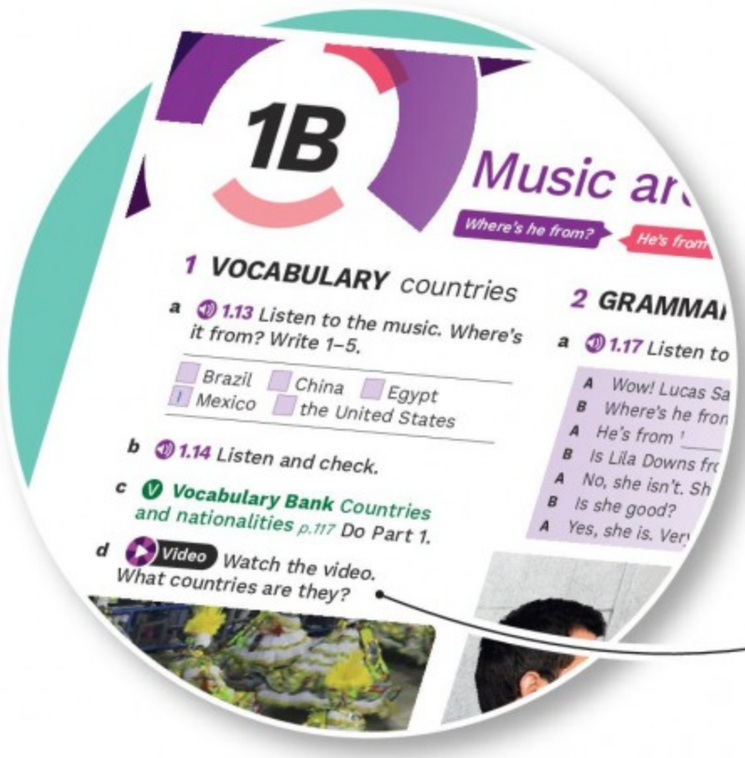
131 **Words and phrases to learn** 133 **Regular and irregular verbs** 134 **Sound Bank**

# Welcome to American English File fourth edition




## Student Book

All the language and skills you need to improve your English, with Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation, and skills work in every File.




Bring language learning to life with new videos integrated into the lessons.

**Look out for the Video icons in every File.**






## Workbook

Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation practice for every lesson.

**Student Book and Workbook also available as an e-Book.**

## NEW SKILLS CONFIDENCE

Develop your confidence in English with access to bite-size Reading, Listening, Speaking, and Writing practice that complements the course. Easily accessible from your mobile device, to use in your own time, at your own pace.

**Access SKILLS CONFIDENCE on Oxford English Hub.**

# NEW Video-enhanced lessons

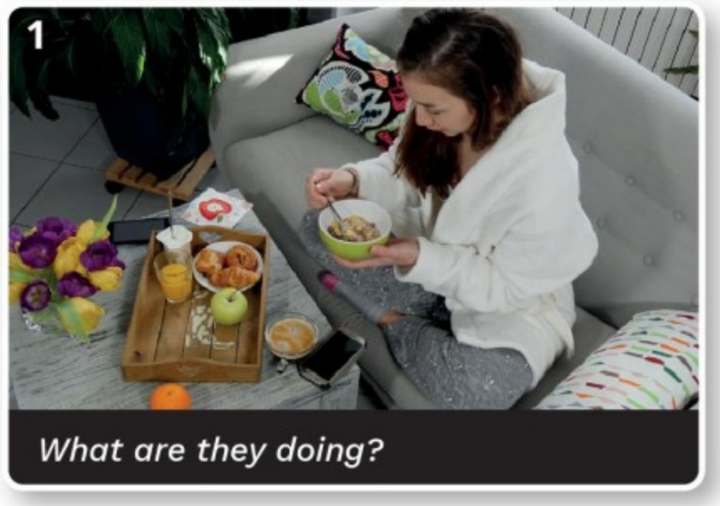
## Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation




**Grammar practice**




**Vocabulary practice**




**Pronunciation**

## Skills development




**Dramas**




**Documentaries**




**Interviews and teacher-generated content**

## Practical English







# Oxford English Hub

Access all video and audio resources, and **SKILLS CONFIDENCE** on Oxford English Hub.

**Use the code in this book to get 2 years' access.**



# 1A Nice to meet you

*Hi, I'm Helen.* *Hello, I'm Tom. Nice to meet you.*

G verb *be* (singular): *I* and *you*
V numbers 0–10, days of the week, saying goodbye
P /h/, /aɪ/, and /i/

## 1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

**a** Video Watch *In a coffee shop* with the subtitles.

**b** Read the conversations. Match them to photos 1–4. Watch the video again without the subtitles and check.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tom** | Hello. Are you Helen? |
| **Helen** | Yes, I am. And you're Tom. |
| **Tom** | Yes! Nice to meet you. |
| **Helen** | Nice to meet you. |
| **Tom** | Just a minute. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Helen** | A cappuccino, please. |
| **Barista 1** | What's your name? |
| **Helen** | Helen. |
| **Barista 1** | Ellen? |
| **Helen** | No, Helen. |
| **Barista 1** | Helen. OK. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tom** | Hi. A tea, please. |
| **Barista 1** | What's your name? |
| **Tom** | Tom. |
| **Barista 1** | Dom. |
| **Tom** | No, I'm Tom, not Dom. |
| **Barista 1** | Sorry. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Barista 2** | Are you Diana? |
| **Helen** | No, I'm not. I'm Helen. |
| **Barista 2** | Sorry. Helen. Your cappuccino. |
| **Helen** | Thanks. |

**c** Video Watch *In a coffee shop (Listen and repeat).* Repeat the conversations.

**d** In pairs, practice the conversations.

## 2 GRAMMAR verb *be* (singular): *I* and *you*

**a** Write *I* or *You* in photos A and B.



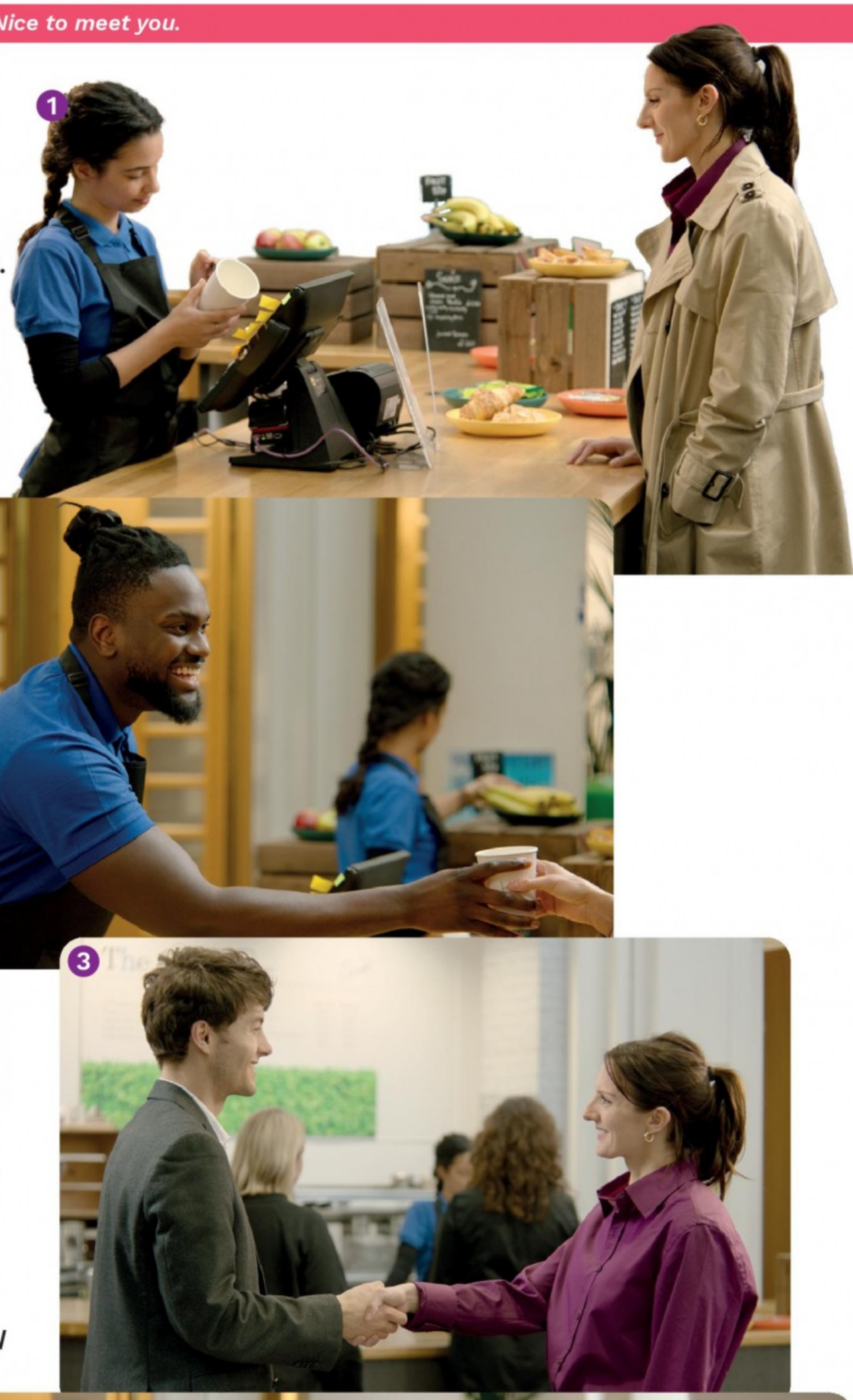




**b** G **Grammar Bank 1A** *p.92*

**c** 1.4 Listen and say the contractions.

1 *I am* I'm



## 3 VOCABULARY numbers 0–10










**a** 1.5 Listen and check (✓) the correct photo.

**b** **Vocabulary Bank** Numbers *p.116*
Do Part 1.

**c** 1.7 Listen and write the numbers.

7 ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

**d** 1.8 Listen and say the next number.

one, two *three*

## 4 PRONUNCIATION
/h/, /aɪ/, and /i/

**a** 1.9 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| **h**ouse | **h**i **h**ello **H**elen |
| b**i**ke | I'm n**i**ce f**i**ve n**i**ne |
| tr**ee** | m**ee**t thr**ee** t**ea** pl**ea**se |

**b** 1.10 Listen and repeat the sentences.

**H**ello, **H**elen!
H**i**, **I**'m M**i**ke.
Thr**ee** t**ea**s, pl**ea**se.

## 5 SPEAKING

Practice with other students.

*Hi, I'm... Are you...?*

*Yes, I am.* — *Nice to meet you.* — *Nice to meet you.*

*No, I'm not.* — *What's your name?* — *I'm...* — *Nice to meet you.* — *Nice to meet you.*

## 6 VOCABULARY
days of the week, saying goodbye

**a** 1.11 Listen and repeat the days of the week.

Monday /ˈmʌndeɪ/
Tuesday /ˈtuzdeɪ/
Wednesday /ˈwɛnzdeɪ/
Thursday /ˈθərzdeɪ/
Friday /ˈfraɪdeɪ/
Saturday /ˈsætərdeɪ/
Sunday /ˈsʌndeɪ/

**Capital letters**
**M**onday **NOT** ~~monday~~
**F**riday **NOT** ~~friday~~

**b** Write the days of the week.

today = _____ tomorrow = _____
the weekend = _____ and _____

**c** Cover **a** and say the days from Monday to Sunday. What days are your English classes?

**d** 1.12 Listen and repeat.




**e** Say goodbye.

*Bye. See you tomorrow.*

# 1B Music around the world

G verb *be* (singular): *he, she, it*
V countries
P /ɪ/, /oʊ/, /s/, and /ʃ/

*Where's he from?* *He's from Brazil.*

## 1 VOCABULARY countries

**a** 1.13 Listen to the music. Where's it from? Write 1–5.

Brazil China Egypt
Mexico the United States

**b** 1.14 Listen and check.

**c** V **Vocabulary Bank** Countries and nationalities *p.117* Do Part 1.

**d** Video Watch the video. What countries are they?



**e** 1.16 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm.

**A** **Where** are you **from**?
**B** I'm from **Lima**.
**A** **Where's Lima**?
**B** It's in **Peru**.

**f** Practice the conversation with your city and country.

**g** C **Communication** Where is it? **A** *p.78* **B** *p.82* Ask and answer questions about cities and countries.

## 2 GRAMMAR verb *be* (singular): *he, she, it*

**a** 1.17 Listen to the conversation. Write the countries.

**A** Wow! Lucas Santtana!
**B** Where's he from?
**A** He's from [1]_____.
**B** Is Lila Downs from [2]_____, too?
**A** No, she isn't. She's from [3]_____.
**B** Is she good?
**A** Yes, she is. Very good.




**b** 1.18 Listen again and repeat.

**c** In pairs, practice the conversation.

**d** Match the words with the photos.

she
it
he




**e** Complete the chart for *be* (singular).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| + | I am = I'*m*<br>you are = you'*re*<br>he is = he_____<br>she is = she_____<br>it is = it_____ | − | I am not = I'*m not*<br>you are not = you *aren't*<br>he is not = he _____<br>she is not = she _____<br>it is not = it _____ |

**f** G **Grammar Bank 1B** *p.92*



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɪ/, /oʊ/, /s/, and /ʃ/

**a** 1.22 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| **fish** | **i**t s**i**x **i**sn't Brazil **E**ngland |
| **phone** | n**o** d**o**n't ph**o**to Mexic**o** kn**ow** |
| **snake** | **s**ay **s**even **c**ity ni**ce** |
| **sh**ower | **sh**e Engli**sh** |

**b** 1.23 Listen and repeat the sentences.

**I**t's s**i**x **i**n Mex**i**co.
I d**o**n't kn**ow**.
It'**s** a ni**ce c**ity.
**Sh**e speaks Engli**sh**.

## 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

**a** 1.24 Listen to the difference between *he* and *she*.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | a | Is he from Vietnam? | b | Is she from Vietnam? |
| 2 | a | He's from Argentina. | b | She's from Argentina. |
| 3 | a | Where's he from? | b | Where's she from? |
| 4 | a | He's nice. | b | She's nice. |
| 5 | a | Where is he? | b | Where is she? |

**b** Practice saying the questions and statements in **a**.

**c** 1.25 Listen and check (✓) the sentence you hear in **a**.

**d** 1.26 Listen and write six statements or questions.

1 He's from Vietnam.

**e** Look at photos 1–12. Ask and answer questions about the people or instruments.

*Where's he from?* — *He's from the US.*

*Where's she from?* — *She's from Japan.*

*Where's it from?* — *It's from Spain.*

**f** 1.27 Listen and check.

**g** Test your partner. Point to a photo and ask a question with *Is he / she / it from...?*

*Number two. Is she from China?*

*No, she isn't. She's from Japan.*



PRACTICAL ENGLISH 1

# How do you spell it?

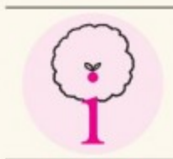
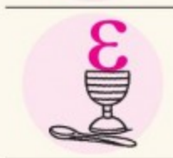
Practical English | checking into a hotel, booking a table | V the classroom | P the alphabet

## 1 PRONUNCIATION the alphabet

**a** 1.28 Listen to the alphabet. Repeat the letters.

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii Jj Kk Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

**b** 1.29 Listen and repeat the sound words, sounds, and letters.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | tree | B C D E G P T V Z |
|  | egg | F L M N S X |
|  | train | A H J K |

**c** 1.30 Listen to the difference between the letters.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | E | A | 7 | G | J |
| 2 | E | I | 8 | K | Q |
| 3 | U | W | 9 | M | N |
| 4 | Y | I | 10 | S | C |
| 5 | B | P | 11 | D | T |
| 6 | B | V | 12 | W | V |

**d** 1.31 Listen. Circle the letter you hear in **c**.

**e** 1.32 Look at the photos. How do you say the letters? Listen and check.




**f** C Communication Hit the ships **A** *p.78* **B** *p.82* Play a game with numbers and letters.

## 2 VOCABULARY the classroom

**a** 1.33 Listen and complete the conversation with the words from the list.

Book English spell What

| | |
|---|---|
| **Student** | [1] _____'s *libro* in [2] _____? |
| **Teacher** | [3] _____. |
| **Student** | How do you [4] _____ it? |
| **Teacher** | B-O-O-K. |

**b** V Vocabulary Bank The classroom *p.118*

**c** Complete the conversations.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | **Teacher** | _____ your books, please. _____ to page 7. |
| | **Student** | _____, can you _____ that, please? |
| | **Teacher** | Go to page 7. |
| 2 | **Student** | _____ me. _____ do you spell *birthday*? |
| | **Teacher** | B-I-R-T-H-D-A-Y. |
| 3 | **Student** | _____ I'm late. |
| | **Teacher** | That's OK. Sit _____, please. |

**d** 1.36 Listen and check.

**e** In pairs, practice the conversations in **c**.

**f** 1.37 Listen and do the actions.

1 Stand up.



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## 3 CHECKING INTO A HOTEL

**a** Video Watch *Meet Rob*. Circle a or b.

1 Rob is from _____.
   a the UK
   b the US
2 He's _____.
   a an artist
   b a journalist
3 He's in Poland _____.
   a on vacation
   b for work



**b** Video Watch *Checking into a hotel*. Then order the sentences.



7 W-A-L-K-E-R.
_ My name's Rob Walker. I have a reservation.
_ Sorry?
1 Hello.
_ How do you spell it?
_ Walker.
_ Sorry, what's your surname?
_ Thank you. OK, Mr. Walker. You're in room 321.
_ Good afternoon.
_ W-A-L-K-E-R.
_ Thanks.

**Names**

| | |
|---|---|
| **name** | Rob Walker |
| **first name** | Rob |
| **last name (or surname)** | Walker |

**c** Video Watch *Checking into a hotel (Listen and repeat)*. Repeat the conversation.

**d** **ROLE-PLAY** In pairs, role-play the conversation. Use your first name and last name.

**Greetings**

| | |
|---|---|
| Good morning | » 12:00 p.m. |
| Good afternoon | 12:00 » 6:00 p.m. |
| Good evening | 6:00 p.m. » |

## 4 BOOKING A TABLE



**a** Video Watch *Meet Jenny*. Circle a or b.

1 Jenny's from _____.
   a the US
   b the UK
2 _____ is her birthday.
   a Today
   b Tomorrow
3 Locanda Verde is a _____.
   a restaurant
   b club

**b** Video Watch *Booking a table*. Then complete the information.

**Locanda Verde**

**Bookings**

**Day** _____

**Table for** _____ people

**Time** _____ (o'clock)

**Name** Jenny Ziel_____

| American English | British English |
|---|---|
| vacation<br>Z (zee /zi/) | holiday<br>Z (zed /zɛd/) |

## 5 USEFUL PHRASES

Video Watch and repeat the useful phrases.

| | |
|---|---|
| I have a reservation. | Good morning. |
| How do you spell it? | How can I help you? |
| Sorry? | A table for tomorrow, please. |
| Thank you. | That's right. |

# 2A Are you on vacation?

G verb *be* (plural): *we, you, they*
V nationalities
P /dʒ/, /tʃ/, and /ʃ/

*Are you American?* *No, we aren't. We're from Canada.*

## 1 VOCABULARY nationalities

**a** Look at the photos and circle the nationality words.




**b** Write the countries for each photo.

1 South Korea
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____

**c** V **Vocabulary Bank** Countries and nationalities *p.117* Do Part 2.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION /dʒ/, /tʃ/, and /ʃ/

**a** 2.2 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | **j**azz | **J**apanese Ar**g**entinian |
|  | **ch**ess | **Ch**inese Fren**ch** |
|  | **sh**ower | Spani**sh** Briti**sh** Egypt**i**an |

**b** 2.3 Listen and repeat the sentences.

He isn't from Ar**g**entina. He's **J**apanese.
It isn't Fren**ch**. It's **Ch**inese.
**Sh**e isn't Spani**sh**. **Sh**e's Briti**sh**.

**c** 2.4 Listen. Say the nationality.

1 I'm from Japan. He's Japanese.
2 I'm from Spain. She's Spanish.

## 3 GRAMMAR verb *be* (plural): *we, you, they*

**a** Read the conversation. Complete it with words from the list.

American ~~are~~ aren't Canadian I'm meet sit Thanks




**Jessica** Excuse me. Are these seats free?
**Max** Yes, they [1]are. Please [2]_____ down.
**Jessica** [3]_____. I'm Jessica. Hi.
**Jim** And [4]_____ Jim.
**Max** Are you [5]_____?
**Jessica** No, we [6]_____. We're from the UK.
**Max** Oh, OK! We're [7]_____. I'm Max.
**Rachel** And I'm Rachel.
**Jim** Nice to [8]_____ you.

**b** 2.5 Listen and check. Then complete the chart.

| *be* (plural) | |
|---|---|
| + | − |
| we are = we're | we are not = we aren't |
| you are = you_____ | you are not = you _____ |
| they are = they_____ | they are not = they _____ |

**c** G **Grammar Bank 2A** *p.94*

**d** 2.9 Listen. Ask the questions.

1 You're Chinese. Are you Chinese?
2 We're late. Are we late?

## 4 READING & LISTENING

**a** 2.10 Read and listen to the conversation. Then number the pictures 1–5.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Jessica** | Where in the US are you from? |
| **Max** | We're from here, from Chicago. |
| **Jim** | Chicago's a beautiful city! |
| **Rachel** | Yes, it is. Are you on vacation? |
| **Jim** | No, we aren't. We're here on business. But today's a free day. |
| **Jessica** | Yes, we're tourists today! Oh. What's that? |
| **Jim** | Oh...Are they your dogs? |
| **Max** | Yes, they are. Sit. Sit! |
| **Jessica** | They're very nice. But I'm not very good with dogs. |
| **Jim** | Look – a free table. Over there. |
| **Jessica** | Nice to meet you. Have a nice day. |
| **Max** | Thanks. Nice to meet you, too. |
| **Rachel** | Bye. |




**b** Read the conversation again. Write short answers.

1 Are Rachel and Max from Canada?
No, _____.

2 Are Jessica and Jim on business?
_____

3 Is today a free day for Jessica and Jim?
_____

4 Is Jessica good with dogs?
_____

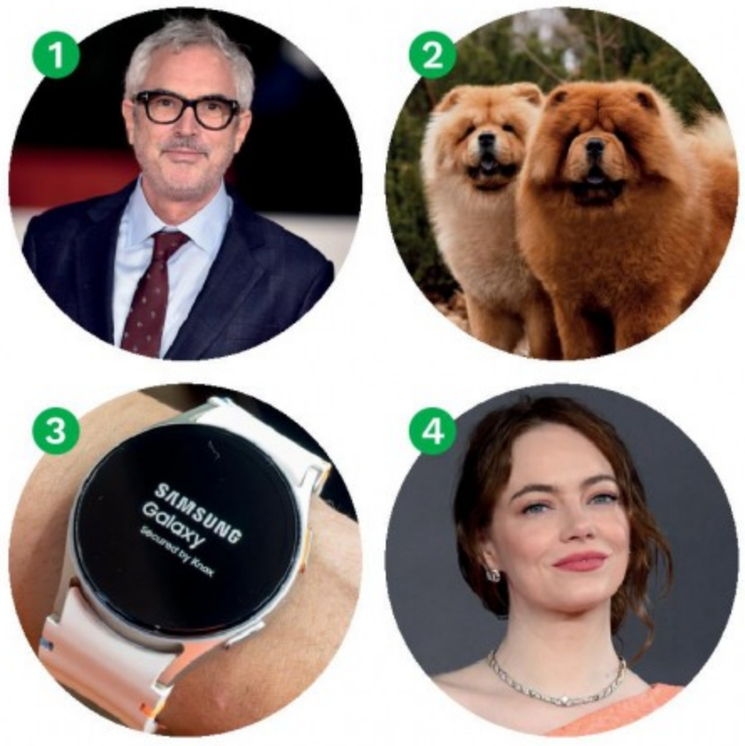
**c** 2.11 Listen and complete the phrases.

1 Excuse me. Are these seats _____?
2 Are you on _____?
3 We're here on _____.
4 What's _____?
5 Have a nice _____.
6 Nice to meet you, _____.

**d** In groups of four, practice the conversations in **3a** and **4a**.

## 5 SPEAKING

**a** Ask and answer the questions with a partner.




1 Is Alfonso Cuarón Mexican?
*Yes, he is. / No, he isn't. / I don't know.*
2 Are Chow Chow dogs Thai?
3 Is Samsung Korean?
4 Is Emma Stone British?

**b** C **Communication** Is sushi Chinese? **A** *p.78* **B** *p.82* Ask and answer about different nationalities.

# 2B What number is the bus?

- G *Wh-* and *How* questions with *be*
- V phone numbers, numbers 11–100
- P understanding numbers

*What's your phone number?* — *It's 617-555-6879.*

## 1 READING & LISTENING

**a** 2.12 Read and listen to the conversation. Then complete the information on the card.

**Pia** Who's he?
**Lin** He's Alex. He's in my class.
**Pia** Where's he from?
**Lin** He's from Mexico.
**Pia** How old is he?
**Lin** He's 22, I think.
**Pia** He's very good-looking!




**b** 2.13 Listen and complete the conversation.




**Lin** Hi, Pia. How are you?
**Pia** Hi, Lin. I'm fine, and you?
**Lin** I'm fine, too. This is Alex. He's in my [1]_____. Alex, this is Pia.
**Pia** Hi, Alex!
**Alex** Hi. [2]_____ class are you in?
**Lin** That's my bus! Bye. See you [3]_____!
**Pia** Bye.
**Alex** Bye. [4]_____ are you from, Pia?
**Pia** I'm from [5]_____. This is my bus stop. Bye, Alex. Nice to meet you.
**Alex** Nice to meet you, too, Pia. What's your [6]_____ number?
**Pia** Sorry, my bus! It's 617-555...




**c** 2.14 Listen and repeat the conversation. Then practice it in groups of three.

## 2 GRAMMAR *Wh-* and *How* questions with *be*

**a** 2.15 Listen and repeat the question words.

How What Where Who

**b** Complete the chart with question words from **a**.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | **A** Where are you from? | **B** I'm from China. |
| 2 | **A** _____ are you? | **B** Fine, thanks. |
| 3 | **A** _____'s Alex? | **B** He's a friend. |
| 4 | **A** _____'s your name? | **B** Molly. |
| 5 | **A** _____'s Alberta? | **B** It's in Canada. |
| 6 | **A** _____ old are you? | **B** 26. |
| 7 | **A** _____'s your phone number? | **B** 617-555-6879. |

**c** 2.16 Listen and check.

**d** G **Grammar Bank 2B** *p.94*

**e** Cover the questions in the chart in **b** and look at the answers. Say the questions.

## 3 VOCABULARY
phone numbers, numbers 11–100

**a** **2.18** Listen and complete the phone number.

2 ___ 2 - ___ ___ 5 - 0 ___ ___ ___

**b** **2.19** Practice saying these phone numbers. Listen and check.

1 193-608-5723

2 035-812-7916

3 44-28-9649-6057

**c** Ask and answer with a partner. Write the number.

*What's your phone number?*

**d** **Vocabulary Bank** Numbers *p.116* Do Part 2 (11–100).

**e** **2.22** Listen and write the numbers.

15 ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

**f** Video Watch the video. What number are the buses?




## 4 PRONUNCIATION & LISTENING
understanding numbers

**a** **2.23** Listen to the difference between the numbers.

1 a 13 b 30
2 a 14 b 40
3 a 15 b 50
4 a 16 b 60
5 a 17 b 70
6 a 18 b 80
7 a 19 b 90

**b** **2.24** Listen. Which number do you hear? Circle a or b in **a**. Then practice saying all the numbers.

**c** **2.25** Listen to the conversations. Number the questions 1–4.

___ What's your address?
___ What's your email?
___ How old are you?
___ What's your phone number?

**d** Listen again and write the numbers in the answers.

1 386-555-___
2 ___ Oak Street
3 Age: ___
4 james___@geemail.com

**Email addresses**
@ = at . = dot

## 5 WRITING & SPEAKING a form

**a** **Writing Bank 1** *p.86* Complete an online form.

**b** **Communication** Personal information **A** *p.79* **B** *p.83* Interview your partner.

## 6 LISTENING



**a** Video Watch *Meet the students*. Check (✓) the things you see.

a car ___ a school ___ a student ___ a class ___
a dictionary ___ a teacher ___ a computer ___
a house ___ a bike ___ a bus ___ a dog ___

**b** Watch again. Circle the correct answer.

1 The school is on the west coast of the *United States* / *United Kingdom*.
2 It's *an English* / *a Spanish* language school.
3 Rike and Hyeongwoo are *teachers* / *students*.
4 Hyeongwoo is *23* / *26* years old.
5 His teacher is *Stephen* / *Laura*.
6 Rike is *Brazilian* / *Chilean*.
7 Laura is a good *teacher* / *student*.
8 Their student house *is* / *isn't* near the school.

**c** Video Watch some extracts from the video. Complete the sentences with words from the list.

bedrooms big cafeteria computer room kitchen small yard

1 It's a _____ school with about 350 students.
2 His class is _____, with only five students.
3 ...they're in the _____...or here, in the _____.
4 It's a big house with five _____, a _____, and a beautiful _____.

# 1&2 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

___'s your name?
a Who b What

1 ___ you from Argentina?
a Are b Is

2 ___ Lisa. I'm Maria.
a Am not b I'm not

3 Hi, Mark! ___ in my class.
a You b You're

4 **A** ___ from?
**B** I'm from Chile.
a Where are you b Where you are

5 **A** Where's Toronto?
**B** ___ in Canada.
a Is b It's

6 **A** Is John married?
**B** No, ___.
a he isn't b she isn't

7 **A** ___ English?
**B** No, she's American.
a She's b Is she

8 They ___ Spanish. They're Mexican.
a aren't b not

9 **A** Are you on vacation?
**B** No, ___ on business.
a we're b we

10 Ana and Julia are from Recife.
___ Brazilian.
a She's b They're

11 **A** ___ Abe and Keiko Japanese?
**B** Yes, they're from Tokyo.
a Are b Is

12 **A** How old ___?
**B** I'm 19.
a you are b are you

13 **A** ___ are you?
**B** Fine, thanks. And you?
a How b Who

14 **A** ___ address?
**B** It's 304 Main Street.
a What your b What's your

15 **A** How ___ your last name?
**B** G-A-R-C-I-A.
a you spell b do you spell

## VOCABULARY

**a** Complete the chart.

| Country | Nationality |
|---|---|
| China | Chinese |
| Peru | 1 _____ |
| 2 _____ | Thai |
| the United States | 3 _____ |
| 4 _____ | English |
| 5 _____ | Egyptian |
| Vietnam | 6 _____ |

**b** Write the next number or word.

one, two, three

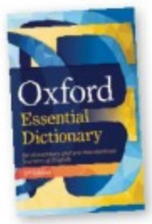
1 zero, one, _____
2 five, six, _____
3 eleven, twelve, _____
4 nineteen, twenty, _____
5 Tuesday, Wednesday, _____
6 Friday, Saturday, _____

**c** Complete the words.

Where are you **fr**om?

1 Good morning. **O**_____ your books, please. Page 19.
2 **A** **S**_____ I'm late. **B** OK. Sit **d**_____.
3 **A** What's the answer to number 10? **B** I don't **kn**_____.
4 **A** Excuse **m**_____, **wh**_____ *plato* in English?
**B** Plate.
**A** Can you **r**_____ that, please?
**B** Yes. Plate.
5 **A** What's your phone **n**_____?
**B** 689-555-8942.
**A** Thanks. What's your **e**_____?
**B** It's tom7901@oup.com.

**d** Write the things in the classroom.



a dictionary


1 _____


2 _____


3 _____


4 _____

**e** **2.26 Words and phrases to learn** Files 1&2 *p.131* Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## PRONUNCIATION

**a** Write the words for the sound pictures.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| |  bike | 3 |  |
| 1 |  | 4 |  |
| 2 |  | 5 |  |

**b** **Sound Bank** *p.134–5* Look at more words with the sounds in **a**, and these sounds:

Practice saying the example words.

**c** Underline the stressed syllable.

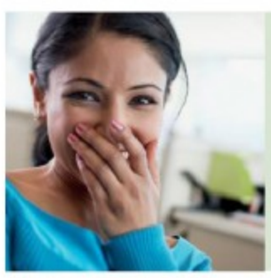
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Sa\|tur\|day | 3 | fif\|teen |
| 1 | Chi\|nese | 4 | to\|morr\|ow |
| 2 | fif\|ty | 5 | Ko\|re\|an |

## Can you understand this text?

Read the profiles and complete the chart for Mark, Bianca, and Roger. Then add information about you.



I'm **Mark Davis**. I'm from Seattle in the US. I'm a teacher. I'm twenty-eight and I'm single.



I'm **Bianca Costa**. I'm from Rio in Brazil. I'm twenty. I'm single and I'm a student.



I'm **Roger Ford**. I'm forty. I'm from Vancouver in Canada. I'm married, with two children. I'm a doctor.

| First name | Mark | Bianca | Roger | _____ (= you) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Last name | | | | |
| Age | 28 | | | |
| Nationality | | | | |
| Marital status | | single | | |
| Occupation | | | doctor | |

## Can you understand these people?

Video Watch and answer the questions.




–




Brian




Richard




Rytis




Christopher

1 The woman's name is ___.
   a Gayna
   b Jeina
   c Jayna

2 Brian is from ___.
   a New York
   b California
   c Texas

3 Richard is ___ years old.
   a 46
   b 56
   c 66

4 Rytis's phone number is ___.
   a 347-222-1289
   b 374-222-1289
   c 247-222-2198

5 Christopher's email address is ___.
   a cyoon123it@yahoo.com
   b chrisyoon@yahoo.com
   c cyoonit123@yahoo.com

## Can you say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

| Can you...? | | Yes, I can. |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | say your name and where you are from | ☐ |
| 2 | ask where other people are from | ☐ |
| 3 | spell your name | ☐ |
| 4 | count from 0 to 100 | ☐ |
| 5 | ask for and give personal information, e.g., name, address, age, etc. | ☐ |
| 6 | say your phone number | ☐ |
| 7 | use and understand classroom language | ☐ |
| 8 | check into a hotel | ☐ |
| 9 | book a table at a restaurant | ☐ |

# 3A Where's my phone?

G singular and plural nouns, *a / an*
V small things
P /z/ and /s/, plural endings

*Is it an ID card?* *No, it's a credit card.*

## 1 VOCABULARY small things

**a** What are the four things? Can you remember?




**b** V **Vocabulary Bank** Small things *p.119*

## 2 GRAMMAR
singular and plural nouns, *a / an*

**a** Read the list. What do you think are the top four things?




**Every day people all over the world say, "Oh no! Where's my...?" The top eight things that people look for are (not in the correct order):**

- ☐ pens and pencils
- ☐ glasses and sunglasses
- ☐ keys (house keys and car keys)
- ☐ wallets and change purses
- ☐ credit cards and debit cards
- ☐ cell phones
- ☐ umbrellas
- ☐ phone chargers

**b** 3.2 Listen and number the things 1–8 in the list in **a**. Is this order true for you?

*For me, my glasses are number one.*

**c** Look at the photos. Complete the chart.

| 1 | 2 | 3 |
|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |
| a *pencil* | a _____ | an _____ |
|  |  |  |
| four _____ | two _____ | three _____ |

**d** G **Grammar Bank 3A** *p.96*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION
/z/ and /s/, plural endings

**a** 3.5 Listen and repeat the sound and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| **z**ebra | **z**ero Bra**z**il i**s** he'**s** |

**b** 3.6 Listen and repeat the plural sounds and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| **z**ebra | bag**s** phone**s** key**s** pen**s** |
| **s**nake | book**s** coat**s** passport**s** tablet**s** |
| /ɪz/ | watch**es** glass**es** piece**s** change purse**s** |

**c** Video Watch the video. What is it? What are they?

**d** Look at the grid at the end of the video. Ask and answer questions.

*What are they?*

*They're...*

*What is it?* *It's a...*



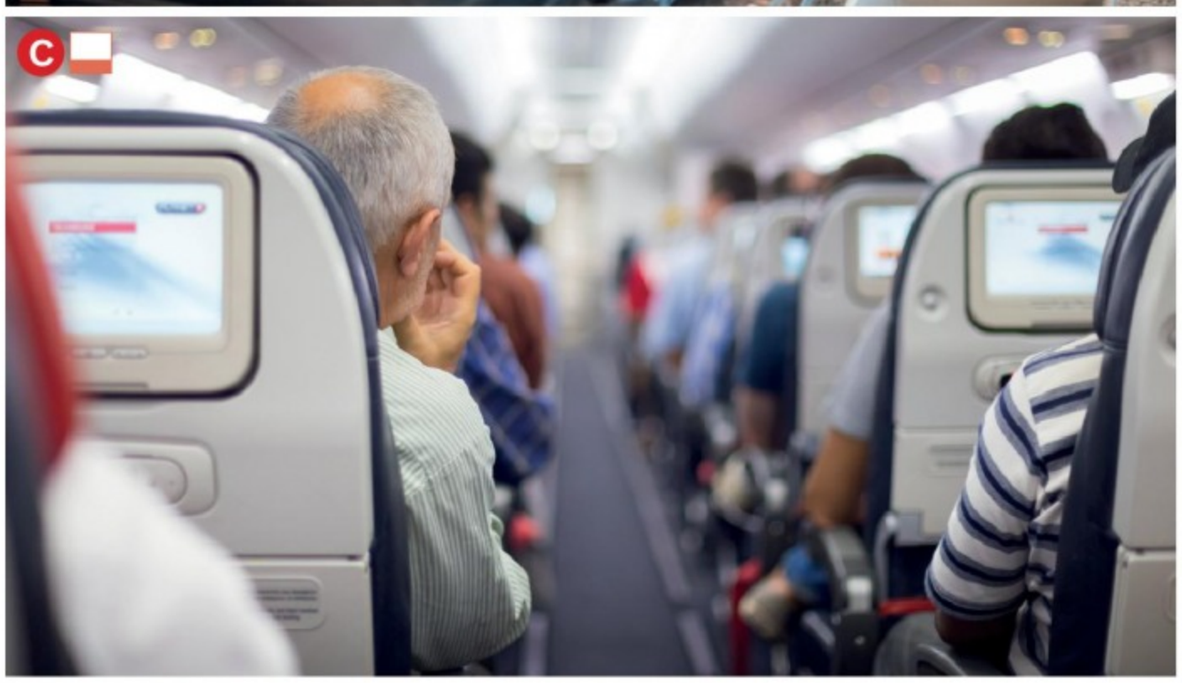
## 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

**a** 3.7 Listen to five situations. Number the photos 1–5.
















**b** Listen again. Write one small thing for each situation.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

**c** What's in your bag or pocket? Check (✓) the things.

- ☐ a book
- ☐ a change purse
- ☐ a credit card
- ☐ glasses
- ☐ an ID card
- ☐ keys
- ☐ a pen
- ☐ a pencil
- ☐ a phone
- ☐ an umbrella
- ☐ a wallet

**d** Now tell a partner.

*In my bag, I have a book, keys, a pen...*

**e** What other things do you have in your bag or pocket? Ask your teacher.

*What's...in English? How do you spell it?*

# 3B Souvenirs

G this / that / these / those
V souvenirs
P /ð/, sentence rhythm

*What are those?* *They're key chains.*

## 1 VOCABULARY souvenirs

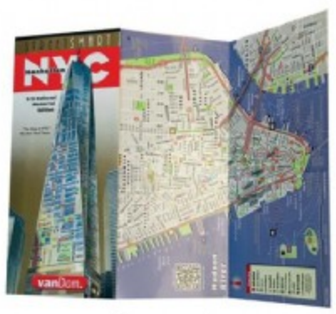
**a** 3.8 Look at the eight things. Listen and repeat the words.



1 a cap /kæp/



2 a key chain /ˈki tʃeɪn/



3 a map /mæp/



4 a mug /mʌg/



5 sunglasses /ˈsʌnˌglæsəz/



6 a toy /tɔɪ/



7 a T-shirt /ˈti ʃərt/



8 a water bottle /ˈwɔtər ˈbɑtl/




**b** Cover the words and photos in **a** and look at the souvenir stall. Say the souvenirs A–H.

**c** What are typical souvenirs in your country?



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## 2 LISTENING

**a** 3.9 Listen and complete the conversation with numbers.



**Woman** Excuse me. What are those?
**Man** They're caps.
**Woman** How much are they?
**Man** They're [1]$_____.




**Woman** And how much are these key chains?
**Man** They're [2]$_____.
**Woman** And this mug?
**Man** [3]$_____.




**Woman** Is that a Yankees T-shirt?
**Man** No, it's a Mets T-shirt.
**Woman** How much is it?
**Man** [4]$_____.
**Woman** Oh...no. Thank you. Bye.

**b** 3.10 Listen and repeat the conversation in **a**. Then practice with a partner.

**c** 3.11 Listen. What does the woman buy?



## 3 GRAMMAR *this / that / these / those*

**a** Read the conversation in **2** again. Complete the chart with the highlighted words.



| | here | there |
|---|---|---|
| singular | this | |
| plural | | |

**b** G **Grammar Bank 3B** *p.96*

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
/ð/, sentence rhythm

**a** 3.13 Listen and repeat the sound and words.



**mother** this that these those the they

**b** 3.14 Listen and complete the conversations with words and numbers.

1 How much is this _____?
It's $_____.
2 How much is that _____?
It's $_____.
3 How much are these _____?
They're $_____.
4 How much are those _____?
They're $_____.
5 Two _____, please.
That's $_____.

**c** Listen again. Then repeat the conversations. Copy the rhythm.

**d** C **Communication** How much are these watches?
**A** *p.79* **B** *p.83* Role-play conversations.

PRACTICAL ENGLISH 2

# An orange juice, please

**Practical English** understanding prices, buying lunch (P) /ʊr/, /s/, and /k/

## 1 UNDERSTANDING PRICES

**a** 3.15 Listen and repeat.



twenty **pounds**

fifty **pence** / fifty **p**

ten **euros**

fifty **cents**

ten **dollars**

twenty-five **cents**

**b** Match the prices and words.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | H | £12.75 | A fifty dollars and nineteen cents |
| 2 | | €15.99 | B eighty cents |
| 3 | | $50.19 | C five pounds thirty-five |
| 4 | | £5.35 | D fifteen euros ninety-nine |
| 5 | | $13.25 | E sixty pence |
| 6 | | €3.20 | F twenty-five cents |
| 7 | | €0.25 | G three euros twenty |
| 8 | | £1.50 | ~~H twelve pounds seventy-five~~ |
| 9 | | 60p | I one pound fifty |
| 10 | | $0.80 | J thirteen dollars and twenty-five cents |

**c** 3.16 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

**d** Cover the words and look at the prices. Practice saying them.

**e** 3.17 Listen to four conversations. How much is it? Circle the correct price.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | newspaper: | $6 | $16 |
| 2 | umbrella: | £15 | £50 |
| 3 | charger: | $18.49 | $8.49 |
| 4 | train ticket: | £13.20 | £30.20 |

## 2 PRONUNCIATION /ʊr/, /s/, and /k/

3.18 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | **t**ourist | e**ur**o E**ur**ope s**ure** |
|  | **s**nake | **c**ent **c**ity pen**ce** pri**ce** |
|  | **k**ey | **c**offee **C**anada **c**redit **c**ard |

**The letter c**

c = /s/ before e and *i*, e.g., *cent*, *city*.

c = /k/ before other letters, e.g., *coffee*.

## 3 BUYING LUNCH

**a** 3.19 Read the menu. Then listen and repeat the food, drinks, and prices.




**b** Practice with a partner. Ask the prices on the menu.

*How much is a tuna sandwich?* *£4.15.*

**c** Video Rob is in a London pub. Watch *Buying lunch in a pub*. Then check (✓) the things he orders on the menu in **a**.




**d** Watch again. Then complete the conversation.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Server** | Who's next? |
| **Rob** | Can I have a [1]ch_____ sandwich, please? |
| **Server** | Anything else? |
| **Rob** | And a [2]C_____, please. |
| **Server** | Ice and lemon? |
| **Rob** | No, [3]th_____. |
| **Server** | There you go. |
| **Rob** | Thanks. How much is it? |
| **Server** | £6.75. |
| **Rob** | Here you [4]a_____. |
| **Server** | Thanks. Here's your change. |



**e** Video Watch *Buying lunch in a pub (Listen and repeat)*. Repeat the conversation.

**f** **ROLE-PLAY** Now role-play the conversation in pairs.

**A** You are the server.

**B** Order food and a drink. Then change roles.

**g** Video Jenny and her friend Amy are in a New York deli. Watch *Buying lunch in a deli*. How much is Jenny's lunch?



**h** Watch again. What do Jenny and Amy have?

| | |
|---|---|
| **Jenny** | |
| **Amy** | |



## 4 USEFUL PHRASES

Video Watch and repeat the useful phrases.

| | |
|---|---|
| Can I have a cheese sandwich, please? | Here you are. |
| Anything else? | Here's your change. |
| And a Coke, please. | I'm fine, too. |
| Ice and lemon? | Wait for me. |
| No, thanks. | Sure! |
| How much is it? | Great idea. |

# 4A This is my family

G possessive adjectives, possessive 's
V people and family
P /ʌ/, /æ/, and /ə/

*Who's Selma?* *She's my boyfriend's sister.*

## 1 VOCABULARY people and family

**a** Look at the photos. Match the words to people 1–4.

a boy  a girl  a man  a woman




**b** 4.1 Listen and check.

**c** V **Vocabulary Bank** People and family *p.120*

## 2 PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/, /æ/, and /ə/

**a** 4.5 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| **u**p | h**u**sband S**u**nday s**o**n m**o**ther br**o**ther |
| c**a**t | m**a**n f**a**mily b**a**g th**a**nks th**a**t |
| **c**omputer | wom**a**n children welc**o**me par**e**nt |

**/ə/**

/ə/ is a very common vowel sound in syllables that aren't stressed, e.g., *wo**m**a**n**, wel**c**o**m**e*.

**b** 4.6 Listen and repeat. Practice the sentences.

**A** Is J**u**stin your h**u**sband?
**B** No, he's my br**o**ther.

I h**a**ve a big f**a**mily. Th**a**t's my gr**a**ndfather.

Th**e** man and wom**a**n over there are my grandpar**e**nts.

## 3 GRAMMAR possessive adjectives, possessive 's

**a** 4.7 Read and listen to the conversations. Do you think Sarah is a) a friend of the family, b) a new babysitter?



**Part 1**

**Maria** Hi, Sarah! Come in.
**Sarah** Thanks.
**Maria** This is my husband, Mark.
**Mark** Hello.
**Sarah** Hi.
**Maria** And these are our children.
**Children** Hello!
**Sarah** What are their names?
**Maria** Her name's Emma, and his name's Oliver.
**Emma** And this is our cat.
**Sarah** Oh, cute. What's its name?
**Emma** *Her* name is Princess. She's a girl.
**Sarah** Oh, sorry.

**b** Read and listen again. Then look at the photo for Part 1. Point to the people and say their names.

He's Mark.



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE



Part 2

**Maria** The name of the restaurant is Marc's Café. The phone number's on the table over there.
**Sarah** Great, thanks.
**Maria** And my husband's phone number is there, too.
**Sarah** OK. And your number is in my phone.
**Maria** Now, children. Sarah is your babysitter. Be good.
**Children** OK, Mom.

**c** 4.8 Listen. Do you think Sarah is a good babysitter?

**d** Complete the chart with the highlighted phrases in **a**.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | my husband | it | |
| you | | we | our children |
| he | | you (plural) | |
| she | | they | |

**e** Read Part 2 again. Complete the sentences.

1 The name of the restaurant is _____ Café.
2 My _____ phone number is there, too.

**f** **Grammar Bank 4A** *p.98*

**g** Point to people in the classroom. What are their names?

*What's his name?* *What's her name?*

**h** Video Watch the video. Who are the people in Paula's family and Scott's family?




## 4 LISTENING




**a** 4.11 Carly is with her friend Marina. It's Carly's birthday. Look at the names in her birthday card. Then listen. Who are the people?

1 Paul is Carly's brother.
2 Hayley is Paul's _____.
3 Shira is Jerry's _____.
4 Nicole is Carly's _____.
5 John is _____'s _____.

**b** Listen again. Answer the questions.

1 How old are Paul and Nicole?
2 Who are Mia and Buddy?

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING
### a post about a photo

**a** Work with a partner.

**A** and **B**, write the names of six people (your family or friends) on a piece of paper.

**A**, give your piece of paper to **B**.
**B**, give your piece of paper to **A**.

**A**, ask **B** about his / her people.
**B**, ask **A** about his / her people.

*Who's Marco?* *He's my sister's husband.*

**b** Writing Bank 2 *p.86* Write about a photo of your family.

# 4B The right car for me

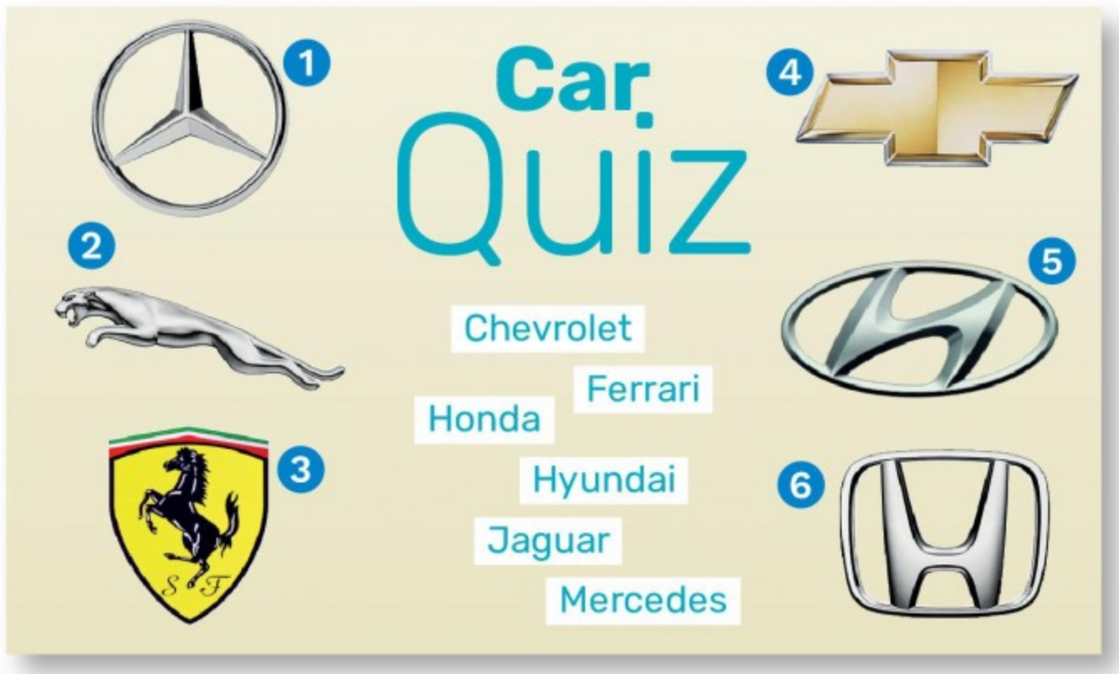
G adjectives
V colors and common adjectives
P /ɑr/ and /ɔr/, linking

*Is it a good car?* *No, it isn't. It's small and very slow.*

## 1 LISTENING & VOCABULARY
colors and common adjectives

**a** Take the quiz with a partner. Match the logos to the cars. What nationality are they?

*1 is Mercedes. I think it's German or Italian.*




**b** 4.12 Listen and check.

**c** 4.13 Now look at the photo and listen to the conversation. Which car is perfect for the woman...?

a in her opinion b in her son's opinion

**d** Read the conversation. Write the highlighted words under the two cars.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Salesperson** | Is the car for you, sir? |
| **Mother** | No, it's for me. |
| **Son** | Yes, it's for my mother. |
| **Salesperson** | Well, ma'am, what about this blue car here? It's small and it's easy to park. |
| **Son** | Yeah, Mom, it's perfect for you. |
| **Mother** | But it's very slow. And it's ugly. |
| **Salesperson** | It's an electric car, ma'am. Very eco-friendly. They're good cars. |
| **Mother** | I prefer...that red car. |
| **Son** | But, Mom, it's a sports car! It's very fast. And it's very expensive. |
| **Mother** | Yes, but it's my money. It's a beautiful car and I love it! How much is it? |
| **Salesperson** | Come with me, ma'am. |
| **Son** | Mom! ... |

**e** 4.14 Listen and repeat the conversation. Then practice it in groups of three.

**f** V **Vocabulary Bank** Adjectives *p.121*

**g** With a partner, talk about your car or your family's car.

*My car is a Chevrolet Bolt. It's American. It's black and it's electric. It isn't very big.*

## 2 GRAMMAR adjectives

**a** Circle a or b.

1 a It's a beautiful car.
  b It's a car beautiful.

2 a They're goods cars.
  b They're good cars.

**b** **Grammar Bank 4B** *p.98*



**c** Video Watch the video. What is it? What are they? Answer with a color.

They're black cats.

**d** Look at the grid at the end of the video. Ask and answer questions.

*What are they?* *They're...*

*What is it?* *It's...*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɑr/ and /ɔr/, linking

**a** 4.19 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| car | large park are card |
| horse | short sport board door |

**b** 4.20 Listen and repeat. Then practice the phrases.

a big umbrella
a short email
brown eggs
an old man
an orange coat
an expensive watch

**c** 4.21 Listen and write five phrases.

## 4 SPEAKING

Talk in small groups.

*I prefer small cities.* *Me too.* *I prefer big cities.*





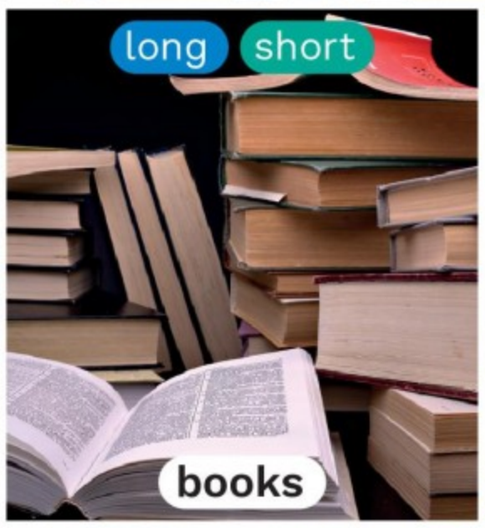

















## 5 LISTENING

**a** Video Watch *Beaulieu Motor Museum*. Which is your favorite car?



**b** Watch again. Then mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Beaulieu is a village in France.
2 The village is not famous.
3 The museum has old and modern cars.
4 The host's favorite car is the Bluebird.
5 The Ferrari Dino is white.
6 The Ford Anglia is an American car.
7 The Ford Anglia is famous because it's in the *Star Wars* movies.
8 The National Motor Museum has only cars.

**c** Do you think it's an interesting museum?

# 3&4 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

___'s your name?
a Who b What

1 Look! It's ___ email from Melanie.
a an b a

2 **A** Where are my sunglasses? **B** ___ in your bag.
a It's b They're

3 These are German ___.
a watchs b watches

4 Kyoto and Osaka are two important ___ in Japan.
a citys b cities

5 **A** What's ___? **B** It's a key chain.
a this b these

6 How much are ___ T-shirts?
a those b that

7 Look at ___ house over there. It's beautiful.
a this b that

8 **A** ___ my friend Tom. **B** Hi. Nice to meet you.
a It is b This is

9 He's Mexican. ___ name is Miguel.
a His b Her

10 We're Mr. and Mrs. Brown. ___ son is in class 4.
a Our b Their

11 Justin is ___ brother.
a Sophies b Sophie's

12 My ___ is Amanda.
a name's wife b wife's name

13 These chairs are ___.
a very expensive b very expensives

14 A Ferrari is a ___.
a car fast b fast car

15 They're ___.
a good photos b goods photos

## VOCABULARY

**a** Write *a / an* + the things.


a wallet


1 _____


2 _____


3 _____


4 _____


5 _____

**b** Complete the chart.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | man | father | 2 _____ | son | 4 _____ | boyfriend |
| | woman | 1 _____ | wife | 3 _____ | sister | 5 _____ |

**c** Write the plural.

mother + father = parents
1 a woman two _____
2 a child three _____
3 a man four _____
4 a person 50 _____

**d** Write the colors.

white
1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____

**e** Write the opposite adjectives.

fast slow
1 big _____
2 expensive _____
3 long _____
4 new _____
5 ugly _____

**f** **4.22 Words and phrases to learn** Files 3&4 *p.131*
Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

## PRONUNCIATION

**a** Write the words for the sound pictures.


bike


1 _____


2 _____


3 _____


4 _____


5 _____

**b** **Sound Bank** *p.134–5* Look at more words with the sounds in **a**, and these sounds:




Practice saying the example words.

**c** Underline the stressed syllable.

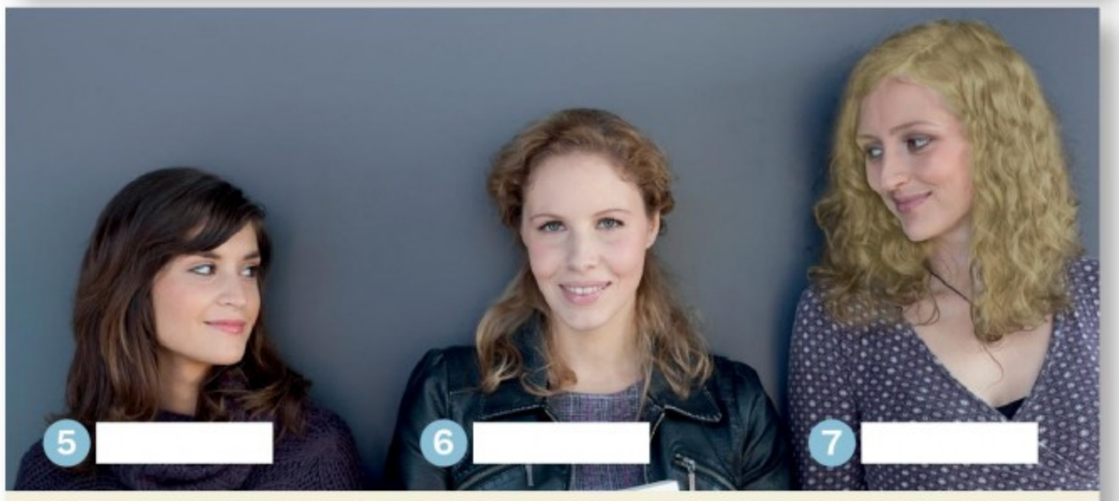
um|bre|lla
1 wo|man
2 sun|glass|es
3 or|ange
4 ex|pen|sive
5 si|ster

## Can you understand this text?

**a** Read the two texts and write the people's names in the photos.




My name's **Joseph Fisher** and I'm from Vancouver, in Canada. I'm married to Beverley and I have two children – a son and a daughter. My son's name is Brandon. He's 17. He's short with dark hair. My daughter's name is Grace. She's 19. I think my children are good-looking, probably because their mother is beautiful!




My name's **Maddie** and I'm from Seattle, in the US. I'm 22. I have two sisters. Their names are Stella and Finn. Stella is 28. She's short, with very dark hair. She's married. Her husband's name is Ezra. Finn is 24 and very different from Stella. She's tall with long blond hair. She isn't married.

**b** Read again and answer the questions with a sentence.

1 What's Joseph's last name?

_____

2 Where is he from?

_____

3 What's his son's name?

_____

4 How old is Grace?

_____

5 What nationality is Maddie?

_____

6 Who is Stella?

_____

7 How old is Finn?

_____

8 Is Finn married?

_____

## Can you understand these people?




Richard Josh Kieran




Debra Daniel

**Video** Watch and answer the questions.

1 What's in Richard's bag?
- a his keys
- b his coat
- c his camera

2 What's in Josh's bag?
- a his phone, charger, and umbrella
- b his notebooks, charger, and laptop
- c his charger, laptop, and books

3 There are ___ people in Kieran's family.
- a 4
- b 5
- c 6

4 A cup of coffee in Debra's local coffee shop is ___.
- a cheap
- b £4
- c $4

5 Daniel's car is ___.
- a new
- b black
- c a Honda

## Can you say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

| Can you...? | Yes, I can. |
|---|---|
| 1 say what's in your bag | ☐ |
| 2 talk about things with *this*, *that*, *these*, and *those* | ☐ |
| 3 say who is in your family | ☐ |
| 4 introduce somebody | ☐ |
| 5 describe cars | ☐ |
| 6 ask for things in a café or store | ☐ |
| 7 ask about prices | ☐ |

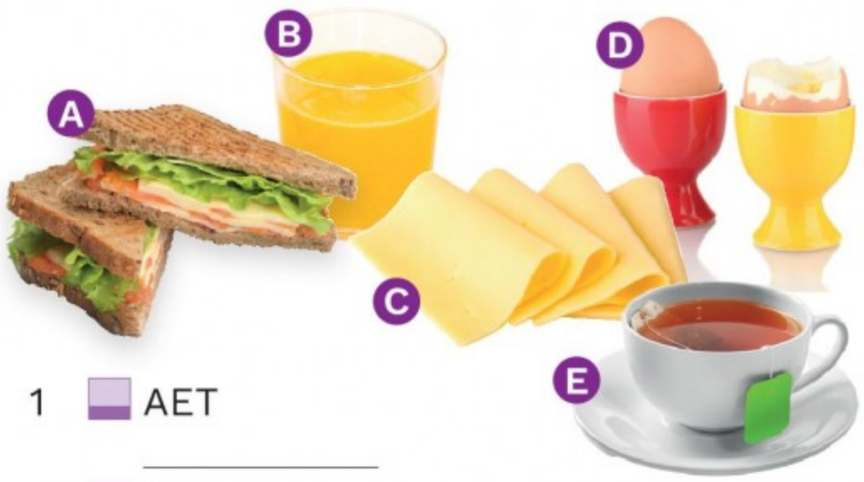
# 5A My favorite meal

G simple present + and −: *I, you, we, they*
V food and drink
P /dʒ/ and /g/

*We have fruit and cereal for breakfast.* *I don't have breakfast. I have a coffee at work.*

## 1 VOCABULARY food and drink

**a** Re-order the letters to make food and drink words. Match them to photos A–E.




1 ☐ AET _____
2 ☐ ESHECE _____
3 ☐ GRANEO CUJIE _____ _____
4 ☐ WANDCHIS _____
5 ☐ GESG _____

**b** 5.1 Listen and check.

**c** V **Vocabulary Bank** Food and drink *p.122*



**d** Video Watch the video. What's in the shopping cart? How many things can you remember?

## 2 READING & SPEAKING

**a** Look at the photos of four breakfasts and read the article and the comments. Who thinks breakfast is a) important, b) not important?

**b** 5.4 Complete the comments with food and drink words. Then listen and check.

**c** Read the comments again. Circle the places where they have breakfast. Underline the other words for food and drink.

**d** Is breakfast important for you? What do you have? Where do you have it?

# A good breakfast – is it important?

**Is breakfast a very important meal, or not important at all?**
Scientists and doctors have different opinions: some think that a big breakfast is good for you because you eat less during the day; others say that if you aren't hungry, don't have breakfast – it's only extra calories!

**Is breakfast important for *you*? Send us a photo of your breakfast.**

**Comments**

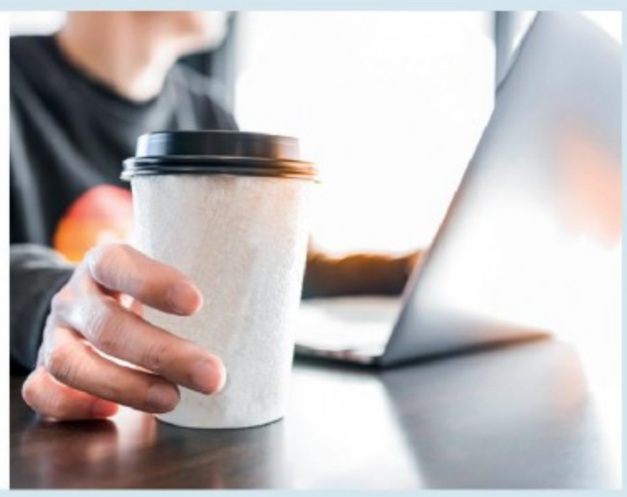
**Ashley, the US** • 1 day ago
I have breakfast in a great café near my office. I have a [1]**cr**oissant and coffee – an espresso with hot [2]**m**_____. Mmmm. I love breakfast! It's my favorite meal.



**Paulo, Brazil** • 1 day ago
I have breakfast at home, but I don't have a big breakfast. I have [3]**fr**_____ and [4]**y**_____, and sometimes toast. It's a healthy breakfast. That's a good thing at the beginning of the day.



**Rob, Canada** • 2 days ago
I don't eat in the morning – I'm not hungry. I just have a [5]**c**_____ at work. But I have lunch early, at about 11:30.



**Sakura, Japan** • 3 days ago
I really like breakfast. It's an important meal for Japanese people. I have breakfast at home with my family. We have a traditional breakfast. It isn't very different from lunch and dinner. We have [6]**r**_____, [7]**f**_____, and miso soup, and we drink green tea. We don't drink coffee with a traditional Japanese breakfast.



## 3 GRAMMAR simple present ⊞ and ⊟: *I, you, we, they*

**a** Complete the sentences from the comments in **2**.

**simple present ⊞ and ⊟**

⊞

**Ashley**

1 I _____ breakfast in a great café.

**Sakura**

2 I really _____ breakfast.

3 We _____ a traditional breakfast.

⊟

**Paulo**

4 I _____ _____ a big breakfast.

**Rob**

5 I _____ _____ in the morning.

**Sakura**

6 We _____ _____ coffee with a traditional Japanese breakfast.

**b** **Grammar Bank 5A** *p.100*

**c** Look at **Vocabulary Bank** Food and drink *p.122*. Say what you like 🙂 and don't like 😕.

*I like fish. I don't like meat.*

## 4 LISTENING

**a** **5.6** Listen to Anna talk about her favorite meal. Complete her column in the chart.





| | Anna | Will | Sarah |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Favorite meal** | dinner | lunch | breakfast |
| **Where?** | [1]At _____ or at a _____. | [4]At _____. | [6]Usually at _____. On Wednesdays, at a _____. |
| **Food** | [2]_____ or _____ and _____. | Different things, but with French fries. | [7]_____ and an _____. On Wednesdays, a muffin. |
| **Drink** | [3]A glass of iced _____. | [5]_____ and then a _____. | [8]_____ or _____. On Wednesdays, _____. |

**b** **5.7** Now repeat for Will and Sarah.

**c** What's your favorite meal of the day?

## 5 PRONUNCIATION /dʒ/ and /g/

**a** **5.8** Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | **j**azz | **j**uice ve**g**etables oran**g**e |
|  | **g**irl | su**g**ar yo**g**urt e**gg**s |

***g* and *j***

Remember *j* always = /dʒ/. *g* is sometimes /g/ (e.g., *su**g**ar*) and sometimes /dʒ/ (e.g., *oran**g**e*), especially before *e*.

**b** **5.9** Listen. Practice the sentences.

I'm **J**ane. I like oran**g**e **j**uice and ve**g**etables.

I'm **G**race. I have e**gg**s, and coffee with su**g**ar.

## 6 SPEAKING

**a** Complete the sentences so they are true about you and people in your country.

### FOOD: YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

**You**

I have breakfast _____. (Where?)

I have _____ for breakfast. (What?)

I have lunch _____. (Where?)

I have dinner with _____. (Who?)

I eat a lot of _____. (What?)

I love _____. (What?)

I don't like _____. (What?)

**Your country**

People have _____ for breakfast. (What?)

They have a big _____. (lunch / dinner)

They _____ a lot of food from other countries. (eat / don't eat)

They eat a lot of _____. (What?)

They drink a lot of _____. (What?)

**b** Talk to a partner. Say your first sentence. Then say *What about you?*

*I have breakfast at home. What about you?*

*I have breakfast at home, too.*

## 7 WRITING a comment post

**Writing Bank 3** *p.86* Write about your breakfast.

# 5B A very long flight

G simple present ?: *I, you, we, they*
V common verb phrases 1
P /w/ and /v/, sentence rhythm and linking

*Do you live in New York?* *No, I don't. I live in London.*

## 1 GRAMMAR simple present ?: *I, you, we, they*





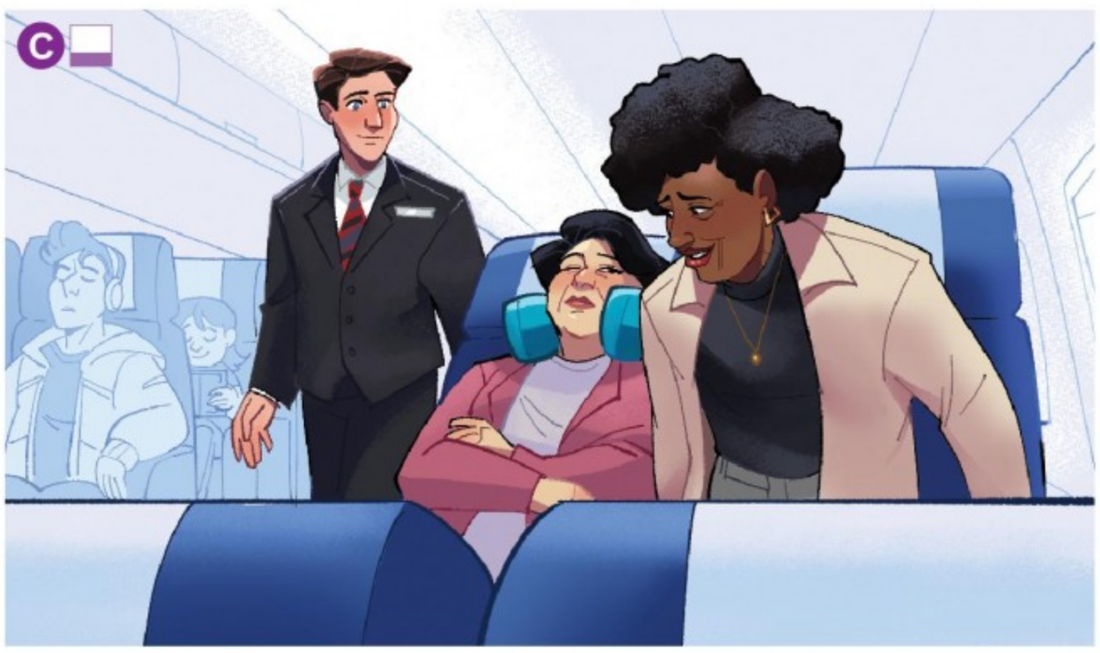


**a** 5.10 Eve, an American woman, and Wendy, a British woman, are on a flight from London to New York. Listen to the conversations and number the pictures 1–4.













1 **Eve** Do you like the [1]_____?
**Wendy** Yes, I do. It's very good.
**Eve** She's my favorite writer. I love her books.

2 **Eve** Do you live in [2]_____?
**Wendy** No, I don't. I live in London. My husband and I work for an American company.
**Eve** Oh! I live in London, too. Do you have [3]_____?
**Wendy** No, we don't.
**Eve** I have two sons and a daughter. David and Andrew are in college and Carla's in high school. Look. Here are some photos... This is a photo of our vacation in Costa Rica. Do you know Costa Rica?
**Wendy** No, I don't.

3 **Attendant** Do you want [4]_____, fish, or pasta?
**Eve** Oh, fish, please.
**Wendy** Pasta for me, please.
**Eve** How's your pasta?
**Wendy** It's OK.
**Eve** This fish isn't very good. Excuse me, I don't like this fish. Can I have the [5]_____, please?
**Attendant** I'm sorry, ma'am. We're out of pasta.

4 **Eve** Oh, I need to go to the restroom. Oops, sorry.
**Wendy** Excuse me. What [6]_____ do we arrive?
**Attendant** In 25 minutes, ma'am.
**Wendy** That's good!

**b** Read the conversation and complete it with words from the list.

book children meat New York pasta time

**c** Listen again and check.

**d** Complete the missing words in the questions and short answers.

[1]_____ you like the book?

+ Yes, I [2]_____. – No, I [3]_____.

**e** G Grammar Bank 5B *p.100*

## 2 VOCABULARY common verb phrases 1

**a** Match the phrases.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | I love | d | a in London. |
| 2 | I live | | b two sons and a daughter. |
| 3 | I work | | c for an American company. |
| 4 | I want | | d her books. |
| 5 | I have | | e fish, please. |

**b** **Vocabulary Bank** Common verb phrases 1 *p.123*

**c** Write four true sentences about you, two affirmative and two negative.

I watch Netflix. I don't read a newspaper.

**d** In pairs, read your sentences to each other. Are any of them the same?

## 3 LISTENING




**a** 5.14 At the end of her trip, Eve gets a taxi back to the airport. Read sentences 1–10 and look at the **bold** words. Then listen and circle a or b.

1 a Her flight is from **LaGuardia** airport.
b Her flight is from **JFK**.

2 a The traffic is **bad**.
b The traffic is **good**.

3 a Eve is from **Boston**.
b Eve is from **New York**.

4 a The taxi driver is from **Costa Rica**.
b The taxi driver is from **Puerto Rico**.

5 a London is very **cheap**.
b London is very **expensive**.

6 a The taxi driver has two **sons**.
b The taxi driver has two **daughters**.

7 a The taxi is **$87.50**.
b The taxi is **$87.15**.

8 a The taxi driver says "Have a good **day**."
b The taxi driver says "Have a good **flight**."

9 a Eve **is late**.
b Eve **isn't late**.

10 a The gate number is **12**.
b The gate number is **20**.

**b** 5.15 Listen to what happens in the airport. Why does Eve say, "What a nice surprise!"?

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /w/ and /v/, sentence rhythm and linking

**a** 5.16 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | **w**itch | **w**ant **w**ork **wh**en **wh**ere |
|  | **v**ase | ver**y** ha**v**e li**v**e T**V** |

**b** 5.17 Listen. Notice the linked (‿) words.

1 A Do you **live**‿in‿a **small house**?
B **No**, I **don't**. I **live**‿in‿a **big house**.

2 A Do you **have**‿a **big family**?
B **Yes**,‿I **do**. I **have three sisters**.

3 A Do you **watch**‿a lot‿of **TV**?
B **No**, I **don't**. I **read books**.

**c** Listen again and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

**d** 5.18 Now listen and write five sentences.

**e** Complete 2–10 with a verb from the list.

drink eat go have listen ~~live~~
need read speak watch

### Do you...

1 live near here? / in a house or an apartment?
2 _____ brothers and sisters? / a cat or a dog?
3 _____ TV on your phone? / YouTube videos?
4 _____ to pop music? / to classical music?
5 _____ a newspaper? / magazines?
6 _____ meat? / a lot of chocolate?
7 _____ orange juice? / tea?
8 _____ Spanish? / Korean?
9 _____ a new phone? / a new car?
10 _____ to a gym? / to the movies on weekends?

**f** Ask and answer questions with a partner.

*Do you live near here?*

*Yes, I do. I live five minutes from here.*

*Do you live in a house or an apartment?*

*I live in a small apartment.*

PRACTICAL ENGLISH 3

# What time is it?

Practical English telling the time (V) the time, saying how you feel (P) /ɑ/, silent consonants

## 1 TELLING THE TIME

**a** Video Watch *Telling the time*. Then match the conversations to photos A–C.










1 **Rob** I'm tired. What time is it?
**Alan** It's eleven o'clock.
**Rob** I need to go. I have a meeting in Oxford tomorrow morning.
**Alan** One more drink?
**Rob** Oh, OK!

2 **Rob** Excuse me. What time is it?
**Woman** It's a quarter to eight. What time's your train?
**Rob** At seven forty-seven.
**Woman** You need to hurry! You only have two minutes.
**Rob** Thanks!

3 **Rob** Hello. I'm Rob Walker. I'm sorry I'm late.
**Man** You're an hour late. It's half past ten.
**Rob** I know. I'm really sorry.

**b** Video Watch *Telling the time (Listen and repeat)*. Repeat the conversations.

**c** Cover the conversations and look at photos A–C. What time is it?

## 2 VOCABULARY the time

**a** 5.19 Listen and repeat the times.


It's three o'clock.


It's five after three.


It's ten after three.


It's (a) quarter after three.


It's twenty after three.


It's twenty-five after three.


It's three-thirty.


It's twenty-five to four.


It's twenty to four.


It's (a) quarter to four.


It's ten to four.


It's five to four.

**b** Cover the times. Look at the watches and say the times.

**c** 5.20 Listen and draw the times on the clocks.

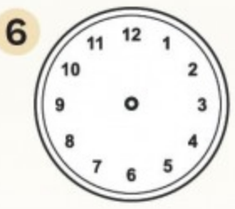
1 

2 

3 

4 

5 

6 

### The time

1 You can also say the time with numbers, e.g., 7:15 = *(a) quarter after seven* **OR** *seven fifteen*.
2 *half past (ten)* (more common in British English) = 10:30
3 *60 minutes* /ˈmɪnəts/ = *one hour* /ˈaʊər/.

**d** Practice the times in **c** with a partner.

*Number 1. What time is it?* — *It's twenty to nine.*

**e** C **Communication** What time is it? **A** *p.79* **B** *p.83*
Ask and answer about times.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɑ/, silent consonants

**a** 5.21 Listen and repeat the sound and words.

| | |
|---|---|
|  **clock** | what Oxford sorry watch |

**b** 5.22 Read the information box. Then listen and repeat the words in the list. Practice saying them.

~~eight~~ half ~~hour~~ ~~know~~ lis~~t~~en ~~two~~ We~~d~~nesday wh~~a~~t ~~w~~rite

**Silent letters**

Some English words have a "silent letter," e.g., in *write* /raɪt/, you don't pronounce the *w*.

**c** 5.23 Listen to the conversations. Then practice with a partner.

A What time is it?
B It's eight-thirty.

A Is the meeting on Wednesday?
B I don't know.

A Listen and write the answer. What's half of four?
B That's easy! Two!

## 4 VOCABULARY saying how you feel

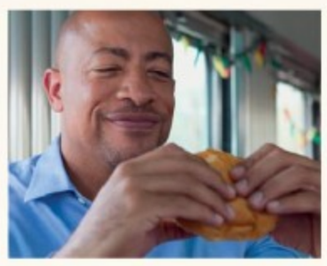
**a** 5.24 Listen and repeat the sentences.



1 I'm tired.



2 I'm cold.



3 I'm hungry.



4 I'm hot.



5 I'm thirsty.

**b** Match the sentences in **a** to a–e.

a ___ Time for lunch.
b ___ Time for bed.
c ___ It's 5° (degrees /dɪ'griz/) this morning.
d ___ I need a glass of water.
e ___ It's 95°!

**c** 5.25 Listen and check. How do you feel right now?

## 5 A NIGHT OUT

**a** Video Watch *A night out*. Then check (✓) the two places Jenny and Amy go to.



- ___ a store
- ___ a café
- ___ a theater
- ___ a club
- ___ a restaurant

**b** Watch again. Complete sentences 1–3 with times.

1 The show is at _____.
2 Jenny and Amy meet at _____.
3 The show ends at _____.

## 6 USEFUL PHRASES

Video Watch and repeat the useful phrases.

| | |
|---|---|
| I need to go. | What a great show! |
| You need to hurry. | It's late and I'm tired. |
| You're an hour late. | Come on. |
| I'm really sorry. | OK. Let's go. |
| Don't worry. | |

# 6A Old friends?

G simple present: *he*, *she*, *it*
V jobs and places of work
P third person *-es*, sentence rhythm

*What does she do?* *She's a journalist. She works for a newspaper.*

## 1 VOCABULARY jobs and places of work



**a** 6.1 Listen to three people at work. What are their jobs?

1 He's a **t**_____ **d**_____.
2 She's a **t**_____.
3 He's a **r**_____.

**b** V **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs and places of work *p.124*

**c** Choose a job from **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs and places of work *p.124*. Ask five other students the questions. Answer their questions.

*What do you do?* *Where do you work?*

## 2 GRAMMAR simple present: *he*, *she*, *it*

**a** Video Watch two friends talk about a school reunion. Then, in pairs, match people A–E in the photos to the names in the list.

Anna ▬ Julia ▬ Laura ▬ Matt ▬ Sarah ▬

**b** Watch the video again. Then complete the sentences with *Anna*, *Laura*, or *Matt*.

1 _____ doesn't wear glasses now.
2 _____ has gray hair.
3 _____ has red shoes.
4 _____ is a journalist.
5 _____ is a teacher.
6 _____ is Matt's wife.
7 _____ teaches Spanish.
8 _____ works for a newspaper.

**c** Look at sentences 1–8. Complete the chart.

| | simple present, third person | |
|---|---|---|
| | *I / you* | *he / she* |
| ? | What **do you** do? | What *does* **she** do? |
| + | **I work** in a school.<br>**I have** a good job. | **He** _____ in a school.<br>**He** _____ a good job. |
| – | **I don't wear** glasses. | **She** _____ glasses. |

**d** G **Grammar Bank 6A** *p.102*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION third person -es

**a** 6.6 Listen and circle the words where final -es = /ɪz/.

does finishes goes likes lives teaches watches writes

**b** 6.7 Listen. Change the sentences. Use the third person.

1 I live in New York. He... *He lives in New York.*

## 4 READING

**a** In what jobs in your country do people need to speak English?

**b** Read the article. Complete 1 and 2 with a job from **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs and places of work *p.124*.




### Do you speak English at work?

What do these people have in common: a banker in Mexico City, a salesperson in a department store in Paris, and a worker in an electronics factory in Tokyo? They all speak English at work. Do you speak English at work? Write and tell us.



**Marcos** I work in a restaurant in Madrid. I'm a [1]_____. I speak English at work every day because a lot of tourists come here. I help customers with the menu and I say what the special dishes are. They are very happy because they can talk to me in English. A lot of tourists don't speak Spanish, but they usually speak English.



**Martina** I'm a [2]_____ and I work in an office in Buenos Aires. It's a multinational company. When people from other countries visit the company, I need to welcome them in English. I also need to answer the phone in English. When we have meetings, we all speak in English because it's the language of the company.

**c** 6.8 Now read again and listen. Check your answers.

**d** Answer the questions with a partner.

1 Why does Marcos speak English at work?
2 How does he help people?
3 Who does Martina work for?
4 What two things does she do in English?
5 Why do they speak English in meetings in her company?

***Why...? Because...***

We use *Why...?* /waɪ/ to ask for a reason, and *Because...* /bɪ'kʌz/ to give a reason.

***Why** are the tourists happy? **Because** they can talk to Marcos in English.*

## 5 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sentence rhythm

**a** 6.9 Listen to the conversation.



**A** **What** does he **do**?
**B** He's a **nurse**.
**A** **Where** does he **work**?
**B** He **works** in a **hospital**.
**A** Does he **speak English** at **work**?
**B** **No**, he **doesn't**.
**A** Does he **like** his **job**?
**B** **Yes**, he **does**.

**b** 6.10 Listen again and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

**c** Think of two people you know who have jobs. Ask and answer with a partner.

What / he (she) do?
Where / he (she) work?
/ he (she) speak English at work?
/ he (she) like his (her) job? Why?

*Person number one is my mother.*

*What does she do?*

## 6 WRITING

Write paragraphs about the two people in **5c**.

My mother is a teacher. She works at an elementary school in São Paulo. She doesn't speak English at work. She loves her job because she likes children!

# 6B Good morning, good night

G adverbs of frequency
V a typical day
P /y/ and /yu/, sentence rhythm

*What time do you usually get up?* *I get up at 7:00.*

## 1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

**a** Read the questions in *Are you a morning person?* and think about your answers.




**b** 6.11 Look at the photo and listen to Hannah answer the questions in **a**. Does she like mornings?



*Hannah works for the BBC. Her son, Kit, is three years old.*

**Glossary**
avocado

bath


**c** Listen again. How does Hannah answer questions 1–8?

**d** 6.12 Listen and repeat questions 1–8.

**e** Ask your partner the questions. Is he or she a "morning person"? Why (not)?

## 2 VOCABULARY a typical day

**a** V **Vocabulary Bank** A typical day *p.125*

**b** Can you remember? Mime or draw five verb phrases for your partner to guess.

## 3 GRAMMAR adverbs of frequency

**a** Match sentences 1–4 to a–d.

| | | | M | Tu | W | Th | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | I always get up at 8:00... | c | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| 2 | I never drink coffee... | | ✗ | ✗ | ✗ | ✗ | ✗ |
| 3 | I usually finish work at 6:00,... | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✗ |
| 4 | I sometimes watch TV,... | | ✗ | ✓ | ✗ | ✗ | ✓ |

a but on Fridays I finish at 3:00.
b or I read and listen to music.
c because I start work at 9:00.
d because I don't like it.

**b** G **Grammar Bank 6B** *p.102*



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## 4 PRONUNCIATION /y/ and /yu/, sentence rhythm

**a** 6.16 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| **y**acht | **y**es **y**ou **y**oung **y**ellow |
| /yu/ | **u**sually m**u**seum m**u**sic b**eau**tiful |

**b** 6.17 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

**What time** do you **usually have lunch**?
At **one-thirty**.
**What time** do you **usually have dinner**?
At about **eight** o'**clock**.
**What time** do you **usually go** to **bed**?
At **eleven-thirty**.

**c** Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

**d** In pairs, make true sentences about you. Use *always*, *usually*, *sometimes*, or *never*.

- listen to music in the car
- read a newspaper in the morning
- speak English outside class
- watch TV in the evening
- have a big lunch
- do housework on the weekend
- eat fast food
- drink espresso

*I always listen to music in the car. I listen to jazz or pop music.*

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

**a** Use the pictures in **Vocabulary Bank** A typical day *p.125* to tell your partner about your typical evening. Use adverbs of frequency.

*I never make dinner. My father makes it. We usually have dinner at eight-thirty.*

**b** Write about your typical morning and afternoon. Use adverbs of frequency (*always*, *usually*, etc.) and time words (*then*, *after breakfast*, etc.).

## 6 LISTENING



**a** Video Watch *A day in the life of a New York tour guide*. Number the places in New York in the order you see them.

- Times Square
- Central Park
- Greenwich Village
- 1 Brooklyn
- Wall Street

**b** Watch again. Then choose a, b, or c.

1 Peter lives in an apartment in ___.
a Greenwich Village b Brooklyn c Wall Street

2 He gets up at ___ o'clock.
a seven b eight c nine

3 He sometimes has ___ for breakfast.
a a croissant b toast c an omelet

4 He goes to work by ___.
a car b subway c bus

5 His tours begin at ___ o'clock.
a nine b ten c eleven

6 He usually has a ___ for lunch.
a sandwich b pizza c hot dog

7 In the evening, he sometimes ___.
a listens to music b studies c watches TV

8 Every day, he walks about ___ miles.
a six b twelve c sixteen

**c** Video Watch some extracts from the video. Complete the sentences with a "time" word or phrase.

1 _____ _____, he goes there by subway.
2 _____ work, Peter takes the subway back to Brooklyn.
3 _____ he relaxes.

**d** Do you think Peter's job is easy or difficult? Why?

# 5&6 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

___'s your name?
a Who b What

1 In Japan, we ___ rice for breakfast.
a have b has

2 They ___ meat.
a don't eat b not eat

3 You ___ a lot of fast food. It isn't good for you.
a eats b eat

4 I ___ tea. I prefer coffee.
a don't drink b 'm not drink

5 ___ you want a sandwich?
a Are b Do

6 **A** Do they live near here?
**B** Yes, they ___.
a do b live

7 ___ Mexican food?
a Like you b Do you like

8 **A** What time ___?
**B** At 5:30.
a do we arrive b we arrive

9 ___ she speak Spanish?
a Do b Does

10 He ___ for a fashion magazine.
a works b work

11 My brother ___ children.
a don't have b doesn't have

12 She ___ to the gym after work.
a go b goes

13 He ___ a shower before breakfast.
a always takes b takes always

14 I ___ to bed before 12:00.
a don't never go b never go

15 What time ___ lunch?
a you have usually
b do you usually have

## VOCABULARY

**a** Write the words.



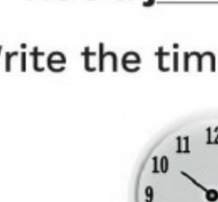
bread



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____

**b** Complete the verbs.

take a shower

1 **r**_____ the newspaper
2 **l**_____ to the radio
3 **g**_____ shopping
4 **l**_____ in an apartment
5 **g**_____ up in the morning
6 **w**_____ TV
7 **d**_____ housework
8 **sp**_____ English
9 **h**_____ two children
10 **dr**_____ tea

**c** Complete the words.

My wife's a **t**eacher in a school in the city.

1 I don't have a job. I'm **u**_____.
2 He's a **s**_____. He works in a restaurant.
3 My grandfather doesn't work now. He's **r**_____.
4 My sister's a **n**_____. She works in a big hospital.
5 He's a **j**_____. He writes for the *New York Times*.

**d** Write the times.



(a) quarter after ten



3 _____



1 _____



4 _____



2 _____



5 _____

**e** **6.18 Words and phrases to learn** Files 5&6 *p.131* Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

## PRONUNCIATION

**a** Write the words for the sound pictures.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| |  bike | 2 |  | 4 |  |
| 1 |  | 3 |  | 5 |  |

**b** **Sound Bank** *p.134–5* Look at more words with the sounds in **a**, and these sounds:

Practice saying the example words.

**c** Underline the stressed syllable.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | break\|fast | 2 | po\|lice o\|ffi\|cer | 4 | u\|su\|a\|lly |
| 1 | po\|ta\|toes | 3 | al\|ways | 5 | cer\|e\|al |

## Can you understand this text?

**a** Read the text and complete it with words from the list.

coffee ~~diet~~ don't every good hamburgers
meat potatoes small stop vegetables

### Eat the Japanese way

Doctors say that the traditional *diet* in Japan and other Asian countries is very healthy.



#### Why is it good for you?

In Japan, people [1]_____ eat a lot of red meat, butter, or cheese. They eat a lot of rice and fish, and fresh fruit and [2]_____. This diet is very [3]_____ for your heart, and people in Japan live longer than in other countries.

#### How to eat like the Japanese

- Eat rice with your meals and don't eat a lot of [4]_____, especially French fries.
- Eat a lot of fish. Don't eat a lot of [5]_____, for example, steak and [6]_____.
- Eat fresh fruit and vegetables [7]_____ day.
- Drink green tea, not [8]_____.
- Eat on [9]_____ plates. Eat slowly.
- [10]_____ eating when you are full.

**b** Do you eat "the Japanese way"?

## Can you understand these people?


1 John


2 Josh


3 Lisa


4 Susan


5 Shrenik

**Video** Watch and answer the questions.

1 For breakfast John usually has ___.
   a tea and cereal
   b tea and toast
   c coffee and toast
2 Josh lives in ___.
   a a house in Chinatown
   b a house near Chinatown
   c an apartment in Chinatown
3 Lisa's son is ___.
   a 1
   b 6
   c 16
4 Susan ___.
   a doesn't work
   b is a taxi driver
   c works in an office
5 Shrenik gets up at ___ during the week.
   a 5:50 a.m.
   b 6:50 a.m.
   c 7:50 a.m.

## Can you say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

| | Can you...? | Yes, I can. |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | say what you do (your job or activity) | ☐ |
| 2 | ask what other people do | ☐ |
| 3 | say what you have for breakfast | ☐ |
| 4 | say what people eat in your country | ☐ |
| 5 | ask and say what time it is | ☐ |
| 6 | say what you do on a typical day | ☐ |
| 7 | ask about other people's days | ☐ |

# 7A On the weekend

G word order in questions: *be* and simple present
V common verb phrases 2: free time
P /w/, /h/, /ɛr/, and /aʊ/

*What do you do on the weekend?* *I usually visit my family.*

## 1 READING & LISTENING

**a** Read the article. Then with a partner, guess which percentages in the list are in blanks 1–5. Don't write them in yet.

10% 46% 48% 66% 75%

**%** = percent

**b** 7.1 Read and listen to the article. Complete it with the percentages in **a**. How many did you guess correctly?

### Three out of four people do the same thing every weekend!

After a hard week at work, the weekend is a time to do something fun and exciting. But a new study says that [1]_____ of people do the same activities every Saturday and Sunday. What do they do? [2]_____ watch TV, [3]_____ go shopping, and [4]_____ do housework. And [5]_____ spend the weekend at home. They never leave the house!





**c** 7.2 Listen to Amelia talk about her weekend. Are her weekends usually the same?

**d** Listen again. When does Amelia do these things? Write **Fr** (Friday), **Sa** (Saturday), or **Su** (Sunday).

1 ___ She does housework.
2 ___ She gets up at 5:00 a.m.
3 ___ She gets up at about 9:00 a.m.
4 Fr She goes to a restaurant with her husband.
5 ___ She goes to the supermarket.
6 ___ She has lunch with her sister.
7 ___ She meets friends.
8 ___ She watches TV.
9 ___ She works until 6:00 p.m.



Amelia is a nurse. She lives in Denver with her husband, Ben.

**e** Do you do the same thing every weekend, or are your weekends different?

## 2 VOCABULARY
common verb phrases 2: free time

**a** Look at some sentences from the interview. Can you remember the missing verbs?

1 My husband, Ben, and I always _____ out for dinner or a movie.
2 We sometimes _____ friends there, too.
3 In the evening, we usually _____ at home and watch TV.

**b** 7.3 Listen and check.

**c** V **Vocabulary Bank** Common verb phrases 2 *p.126* Do Part 1.

**d** Video Watch the video. What are the free-time phrases?



## 3 GRAMMAR
word order in questions: *be* and simple present

**a** Re-order the words to make questions. Can you remember Amelia's answers?

1 's favorite what your of weekend part the

_____

_____?

2 tired Sunday on evening you are

_____

_____?

3 Saturdays do usually what do you on

_____

_____?

4 do do thing weekend every same you the

_____

_____?

**b** **Grammar Bank 7A** *p.104*

## 4 PRONUNCIATION
/w/, /h/, /ɛr/, and /aʊ/

**a** **7.7** Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | **w**itch | **wh**at **wh**en **wh**y<br>**w**alk **w**atch al**w**ays |
|  | **h**ouse | **h**ow **h**ome **h**usband<br>**h**er **wh**o |
|  | ch**air** | h**air** wh**ere**<br>th**ere** th**eir** |
|  | **ow**l | n**ow** t**ow**n<br>**ou**t m**ou**ntains |

**b** **7.8** Listen and repeat the conversations. Then practice them with a partner.

**A** **Wh**at do you do on the **w**eekend?
**B** I **w**alk, or I **w**atch TV.

**A** **Wh**o's **H**enry?
**B** **H**e's my **h**usband.

**A** Wh**ere** do they live?
**B** Th**eir** house is over th**ere**.

**A** H**ow** do you relax?
**B** I go to the m**ou**ntains near my t**ow**n.

## 5 SPEAKING

**a** Look at the questions. What are the missing words? Think about your answers.

# *Your weekend*

| | | Your partner |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | / go out on Friday or Saturday night? Where / go? | |
| 2 | / go shopping on Saturday? Where? | |
| 3 | / do housework on the weekend? | |
| 4 | / play sports or exercise? What / do? | |
| 5 | / watch sports on TV? What / watch? | |
| 6 | What time / get up on Sunday? | |
| 7 | Where / have lunch? | |
| 8 | How / relax on the weekend? | |
| 9 | / usually tired on Sunday evening? Why? | |
| 10 | What time / go to bed? | |
| 11 | What / your favorite part of the weekend? | |

**b** Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Write your partner's answers.

*Do you go out on Friday or Saturday night?*

*Yes, I usually go out with my friends on Saturday night.*

*Where do you go?*

*It depends. To the movies or to a restaurant...*

**c** Find a new partner. Ask and answer some questions about your old partner's weekend.

*Does Pablo play sports or exercise on the weekend?*

*Yes, he does. He goes to the gym on Saturday morning.*

# 7B Lights, camera, action!

G imperatives, object pronouns: *me*, *him*, etc.
V kinds of movies
P sentence rhythm

*And Paul? Do you love him?* *Don't talk about Paul!*

## 1 GRAMMAR imperatives, object pronouns: *me*, *him*, etc.




**a** 7.9 Listen to the director and the actors. Does Daisy love Sam? Does she love Paul?

**b** Listen again and read the conversation. Circle the correct verb.

**Director** OK. [1]**Be** / **Stay** quiet, please. Scene one, take one. Lights, camera,...action!
**Daisy** Hello, Sam.
**Sam** Hello, Daisy.
**Daisy** [2]**Come** / **Go** in. Sit down. We need to talk.
**Sam** Talk? What about?
**Daisy** Us. You and me.
**Sam** [3]**Speak** / **Listen** to me, Daisy. I love you! Do you love me?
**Daisy** I don't know, Sam. I need time.
**Sam** And Paul? Do you love him?
**Daisy** [4]**Don't think** / **Don't talk** about Paul. Yes, I like Paul, but I don't love him. You don't understand.
**Sam** [5]**Don't go** / **Don't cry**, Daisy. Please don't cry.
**Director** Cut! Great! I like it.

**Director** OK, Scene two. This is a big scene. Daisy, [6]**walk** / **go** to the windows. [7]**Open** / **Close** them. Sam, go to Daisy. [8]**Stand** / **Sit** next to her. Daisy, [9]**look at** / **listen to** him. That's great. Don't move.
**Sam** What do I say to her? I don't remember.
**Director** Nothing. [10]**Don't do** / **Don't say** anything. Just take her hands and look into her eyes. That's it. Cut!

**c** 7.10 Listen to some extracts from the conversation and complete the sentences with the words from the list.

him it me me them ~~us~~ you

1 "We need to talk."
"Talk? What about?"
"Us."
2 "Listen to _____, Daisy."
3 "I love _____! Do you love _____?"
4 "I like Paul, but I don't love _____."
5 "Great! I like _____."
6 "Go to the windows. Open _____."

**d** G **Grammar Bank 7B** *p.104*

**e** 7.13 Listen and say the object pronoun.

1 I *me*

**f** 7.14 Listen and change the sentence. Use *him*, *her*, *it*, or *them*.

1 I love Scarlett. *I love her.*

**g** In groups of three, act out the conversation in **b**.

## 2 VOCABULARY kinds of movies

**a** Match the kinds of movies 1–7 to movie titles A–G.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | action movies | A | *The Exorcist* *Scream* *The Shining* |
| 2 | animated movies | B | *The Magnificent Seven* *Django Unchained* *The Power of the Dog* |
| 3 | comedies | C | *Pinocchio* *Frozen* *Encanto* |
| 4 | dramas | D | *No Time to Die* *Mission: Impossible* *Top Gun: Maverick* |
| 5 | horror movies | E | *Meet the Parents* *Zoolander* *Barbie* |
| 6 | science fiction movies | F | *The Color Purple* *The Godfather* *Forrest Gump* |
| 7 | westerns | G | *Aliens* *2001: A Space Odyssey* *Avatar* |

**b** 7.15 Listen and check.

**c** 7.16 Now listen and repeat the kinds of movies.

## 3 LISTENING

**a** Look at the movie posters and photos. Do you know the movies and the actors?

**b** 7.17 Listen to five people answering questions about the Spider-Man movies and the actors. Which two speakers like all the movies?




**c** Listen again. Who or what do the **bold** pronouns refer to?

**Speaker 1** **It**'s great.
**Speaker 2** **She**'s OK, but I prefer Zendaya.
**Speaker 3** I think **they**'re awful.
**Speaker 4** I really like **him**. I think **he**'s great.
**Speaker 5** Sorry, I don't know **them**.

**d** What kinds of movies do you like?

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sentence rhythm

**a** 7.18 Listen and repeat the conversations. Copy the rhythm.

**A** Do you **like Zendaya**?
**B** **Yes**, I **do**. She's **very good**.

**C** Do you **like horror movies**?
**D** **No**, I **don't like** them. I **prefer dramas**.

**E** Do you **like Tom Holland**?
**F** **Yes**, I **like** him a **lot**. I **think** he's **great**.

**b** Practice the conversations in **a** with a partner.

**c** Write three kinds of movies or movie franchises and six actors in the chart.

| Kinds of movies or franchises | Male actors | Female actors |
|---|---|---|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

**d** In pairs, ask and answer questions about the people and kinds of movies in the chart.

PRACTICAL ENGLISH 4

# What's the date?

**Practical English** saying the date, talking on the phone (V) months, ordinal numbers (P) /θ/

## 1 VOCABULARY months

**a** When are these special days in the US? Match them to the month.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Independence Day | A | January |
| 2 | New Year's Day | B | February |
| 3 | Halloween | C | July |
| 4 | Valentine's Day | D | November |
| 5 | Thanksgiving | E | October |

**b** (V) **Vocabulary Bank** Months and ordinal numbers *p.127* Do Part 1.

**c** Answer the questions in groups.

1 Which month sometimes has 29 days?
2 Which month has only three letters?
3 Which three months begin with the letter *J*?
4 Which four months end in *-er*?

## 2 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION ordinal numbers; /θ/

**a** Take the Ordinals quiz with a partner.

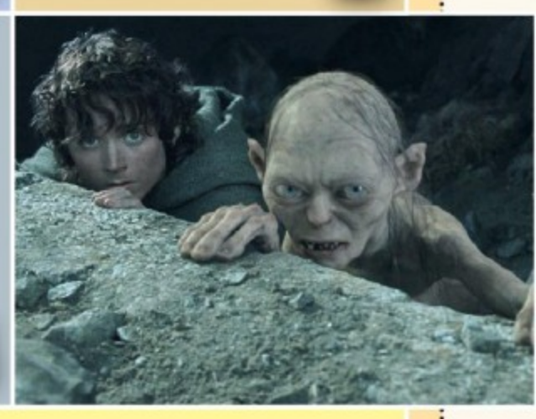
### Ordinals QUIZ



What's the soccer player Messi's **first** name?
a Lionel
b Lucas
c Leonardo
1

What's the **second** meal of the day?
a breakfast
b dinner
c lunch
2

Which is the **third** book in the trilogy *The Lord of the Rings*?
a *The Two Towers*
b *The Return of the King*
c *The Fellowship of the Ring*
3





What's the **fourth** letter on the top row of a keyboard?
a Q b R c T
4




Which city has a famous street called **Fifth** Avenue?
a New York
b London
c Sydney
5

Who was the **sixth** president of the US?
a John Quincy Adams
b Abraham Lincoln
c George Washington
6

Which is the **seventh** *Star Wars* movie?
a *The Return of the Jedi*
b *Rogue One*
c *The Force Awakens*
7



Which is the **eighth** month of the year?
a July
b August
c September
8



The **Ninth** Legion was a group of soldiers from...
a Rome
b Greece
c Egypt
9

**b** 7.20 Listen and check your answers.

**c** (V) **Vocabulary Bank** Months and ordinal numbers *p.127* Do Part 2.

**d** 7.23 Listen and repeat the sound and words.

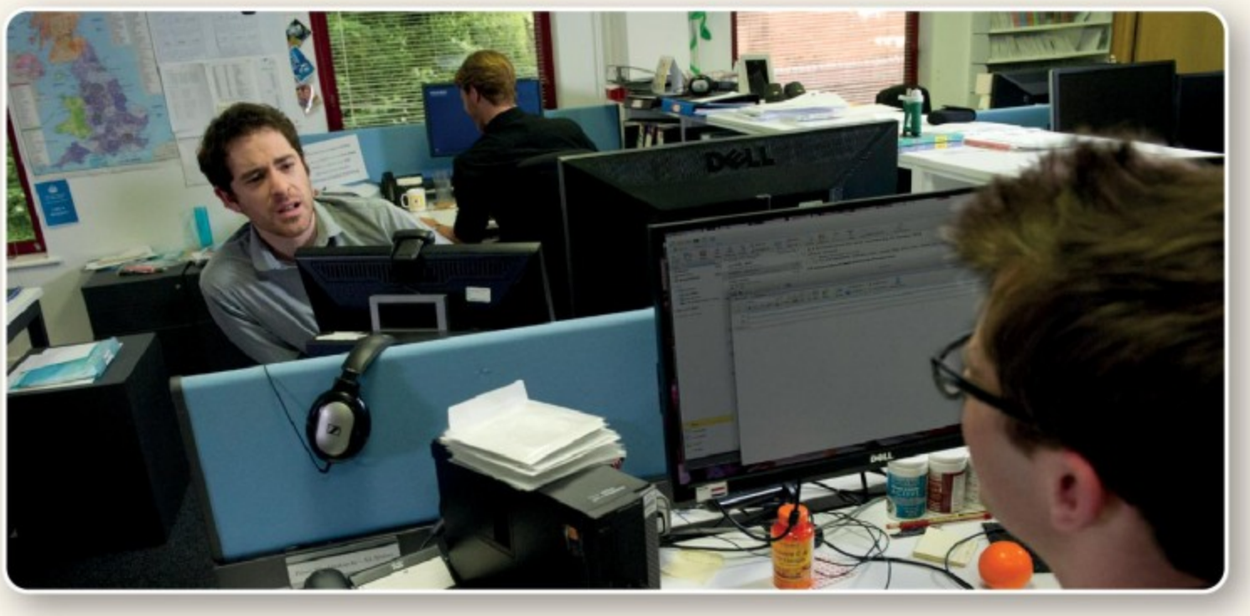
| | |
|---|---|
| θ **th**umb | **th**ree **Th**ursday **th**ird seven**th** nin**th** |

**e** 7.24 Listen. Say the ordinal number.

one *first*

## 3 SAYING THE DATE

**a** Video Watch *Saying the date* Part 1. Then complete the conversation.



| | |
|---|---|
| **Rob** | What's the date today? |
| **Alan** | I think it's the [1]_____ of June. |
| **Rob** | Are you sure? Isn't it the [2]_____? |
| **Alan** | No, definitely the [3]_____. |
| **Rob** | Oh no! It's my dad's [4]_____. |

**b** Watch again and repeat the conversation. Then practice it with a partner.

**c** Video Watch *Saying the date* Part 2. Then answer the questions.



1 Where does Rob go?
2 Why does he give his father a present?
3 When is his father's birthday?

### Saying the date

| You say | You write |
|---|---|
| April first | April 1st April 1 4/1 |
| June second | June 2nd June 2 6/2 |
| March twenty-third | March 23rd March 23 3/23 |
| May fourth | May 4th May 4 5/4 |
| July twentieth | July 20th July 20 7/20 |

| American English | British English |
|---|---|
| June second<br>June 2<br>6/2 | the second of June<br>2 June<br>2/6 |

**d** 7.25 Listen and repeat the dates. Practice saying them.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| January 1st | May 11th | September 22nd |
| February 2nd | June 14th | October 23rd |
| March 8th | July 18th | November 30th |
| April 9th | August 20th | December 31st |

**e** Ask and answer with a partner.

1 What's the date today?
2 What's the date tomorrow?
3 What other dates are holidays in your town (country)?

**f** Stand up. Ask other students: *When's your birthday?* Make a class list.

**g** Tell a partner three birthdays that are important to you.

*My girlfriend's birthday is September second.*

## 4 TALKING ON THE PHONE

**a** Video Watch *Talking on the phone*. Why does Rob call Jenny?



**b** Watch again. Then mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Rob thinks Jenny arrives in London on March 20th.
2 He thinks she leaves on the 29th.
3 It's Thanksgiving in the US.
4 Jenny is with her friends.
5 Rob needs to call Jenny on Tuesday, December 1st.

## 5 USEFUL PHRASES

Video Watch and repeat the useful phrases.

What's the date today?
Are you sure?
Isn't it the 1st?
It's my dad's birthday.
This is for you.
Happy birthday!
Is that Jennifer Zielinski?
Yes. Who's that?
We need to talk about your trip to London.
Of course!
Call me on Monday at work.
Talk to you on Tuesday.

# 8A Can I park here?

G *can / can't*
V more verb phrases
P *can / can't*: /ə/ and /æ/, sentence rhythm

*Can you come on Monday at 8:30?* *No, I can't, but I can come at 10:00.*

## 1 READING & SPEAKING

**a** Read the text. What is the missing word?

### Driving around the world

- In some states in Mexico, you only need to take a written _____, not a driver's _____.
- In Vietnam, it's very difficult to pass the written _____. It has 450 questions!
- In Croatia, you need to have 85 hours of driving lessons before you take the driver's _____.
- In Ukraine, if you do three things wrong in your driver's _____, you fail.
- In Brazil, before your driver's _____, you need to pass a psychological _____ to get your driver's license.

**b** 8.1 Listen and check.

**c** Answer the questions with a partner.

**In your country,...**

- At what age can you get a driver's license?
- Do you need to take a written test?
- Is the driver's test difficult?
- Do people usually need a lot of driving lessons?
- Do many people fail the test the first time they take it?

*In Colombia, you can get a driver's license when you are 16.*

## 2 GRAMMAR *can / can't*

**a** Anna wants to learn to drive. Match her posts to photos 1–3.








**A**

**Anna Jones** @annaj • Jul 19

I need some lessons with a GOOD driving instructor! Friends, can you help?

**B**

**Anna Jones** @annaj • Apr 23

The written test is very difficult. I can practice online, but I can't answer the questions. "Can you turn right at a red light?" I don't know!

**C**

**Anna Jones** @annaj • Jul 18

An 85 on the written test – amazing! 😀 My first lesson with Dad – total disaster! 😫 Now Dad says I can't practice in his car 😕.

**b** 8.2 Listen and check.

**c** 8.3 Listen to Anna calling a driving instructor. Complete the conversation with verbs from the list.

book come (x2) help meet start

**Instructor** Hello, can I [1] _____ you?
**Anna** Yes, can I [2] _____ some driving lessons, please?
**Instructor** Yes, of course.
**Anna** When can I [3] _____?
**Instructor** I'm free on Monday. We can [4] _____ at your house.
**Anna** Can you [5] _____ at 8:30?
**Instructor** No, sorry, I can't. I have a lesson at 8:00.
**Anna** OK...Can you [6] _____ at ten o'clock?
**Instructor** Yes, I can. The lessons are one hour, so 10:00 to 11:00, OK?
**Anna** Great!
**Instructor** What's your name and address?
**Anna** It's Anna Jones...





**d** 8.4 After three months, Anna takes her driver's test. Listen. Does she pass?

**e** Read the posts and the conversation again. Complete the chart.

| | *can* / *can't* |
|---|---|
| + | I *can* practice online. |
| − | I _____ answer the questions. |
| ? | _____ you come at 8:30? |
| ✓ | Yes, I _____. |
| ✗ | No, I _____. |

**f** G **Grammar Bank 8A** *p.106*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION & LISTENING
*can* / *can't*: /ə/ and /æ/, sentence rhythm

**a** 8.6 Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences. Copy the rhythm.

| | |
|---|---|
|  **computer** | **Where** can I **park**?<br>You can **park here**. |
|  **cat** | Can I **park here**?<br>**Yes**, you **can**.<br>**No**, you **can't**.<br>You **can't park here**. |

**b** 8.7 Listen to the difference between *can* and *can't*.

1 a We can park here. b We can't park here.
2 a I can help you. b I can't help you.
3 a You can sit here. b You can't sit here.
4 a Max can go with me. b Max can't go with me.

**c** 8.8 Listen. Circle a or b.

**d** Practice the conversation in **2c** with a partner.

**e** 8.9 Listen to four conversations. Where are the people?

1 on a _____ 3 in a _____
2 in a _____ 4 on the _____

## 4 VOCABULARY more verb phrases

**a** What do these signs mean? Complete the sentences with *can* / *can't* and a verb from the list.




change drive have park pay
play ~~swim~~ take use (x2)

1 You *can't* *swim* here.
2 You _____ _____ here.
3 You _____ _____ a coffee here.
4 You _____ _____ cash here.
5 You _____ _____ your phone here.
6 You _____ _____ the internet here.
7 You _____ _____ photos here.
8 You _____ _____ soccer here.
9 You _____ _____ money here.
10 You _____ _____ fast here.

**b** 8.10 Listen and check.

**c** Cover the sentences and look at the signs. Say what they mean.

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

**a** C **Communication** I'm a tourist. Where can I...? **A** *p.80* **B** *p.84* Ask questions about places in a town.

**b** Write four sentences to give tourists some useful information about what you can (or can't) do in your town.

You can buy fantastic fruit in the market.

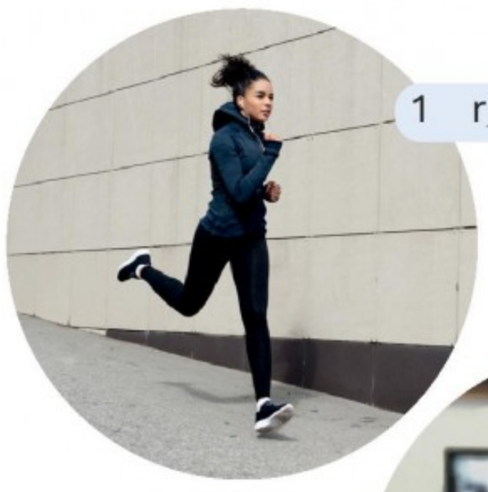
# 8B I ♥ shopping

G *like / love/ hate* + verb + *-ing*
V activities
P /ʊ/, /u/, and /ŋ/, sentence rhythm

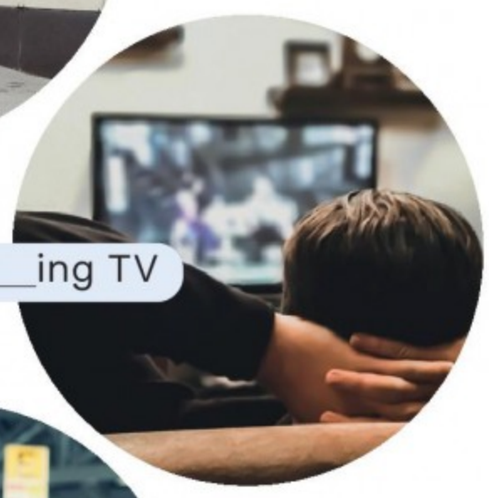
*Do you like camping?* *No, I hate it. I like sleeping in a bed.*

## 1 VOCABULARY activities

**a** What are the activities in the photos? Complete the missing letters.



1 r___ ___ning



2 w___ ___ ___ ___ing TV



3 tr___ ___ ___ ___ing

**b** V **Vocabulary Bank** Activities *p.128*

**c** Video Watch the video. What are the activities?

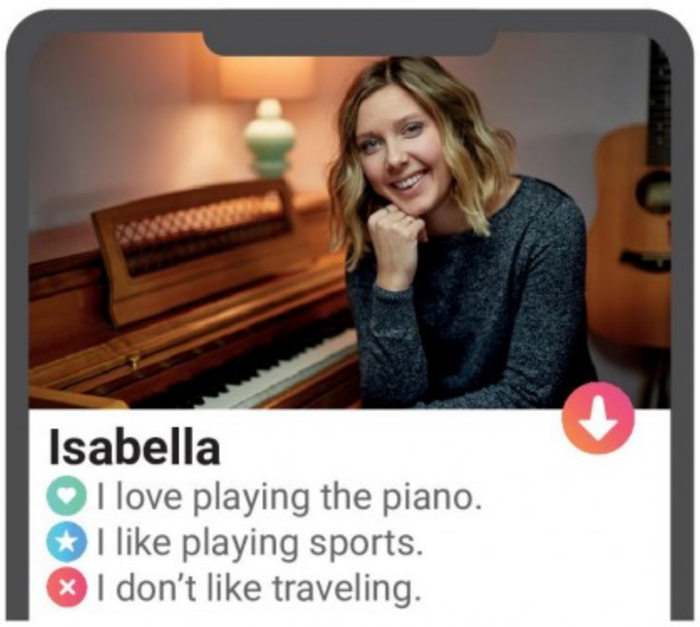


## 2 GRAMMAR *like / love / hate* + verb + *-ing*

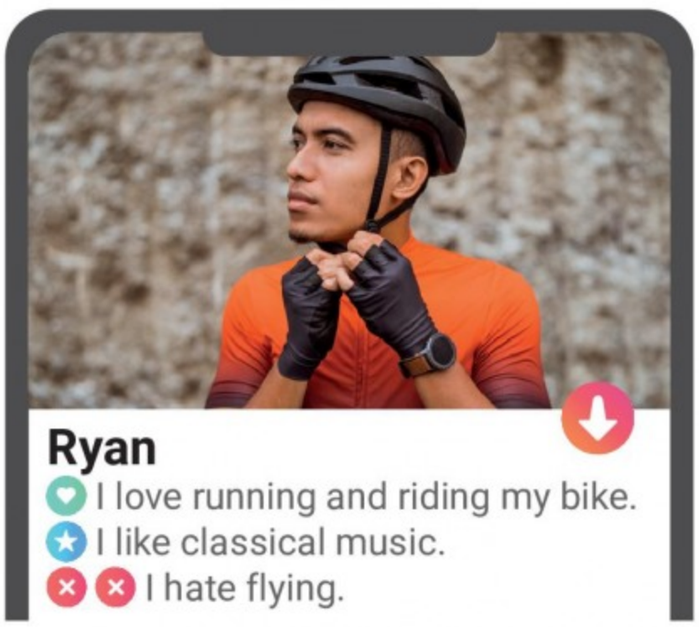
**a** Read the profiles of six people from a dating website. In pairs, match the women and men. Say why.

1 Isabella and _____
2 Angie and _____
3 Adriana and _____

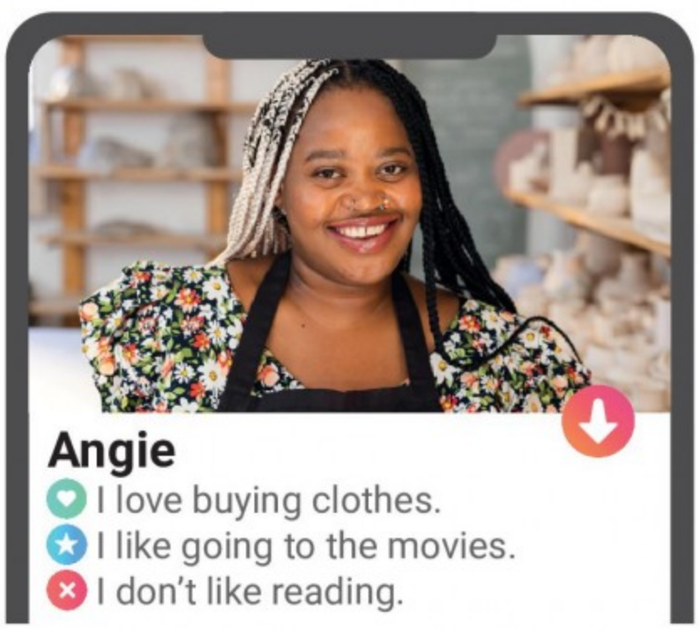
*Isabella and... Because she likes...and he likes...*



**Isabella**
♥ I love playing the piano.
★ I like playing sports.
✕ I don't like traveling.



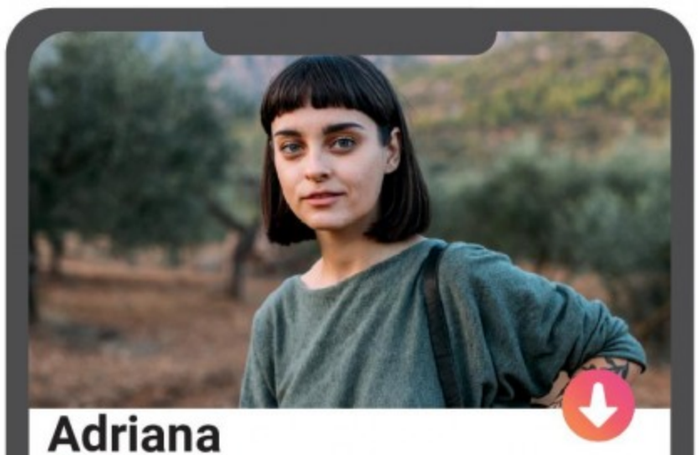
**Ryan**
♥ I love running and riding my bike.
★ I like classical music.
✕ ✕ I hate flying.



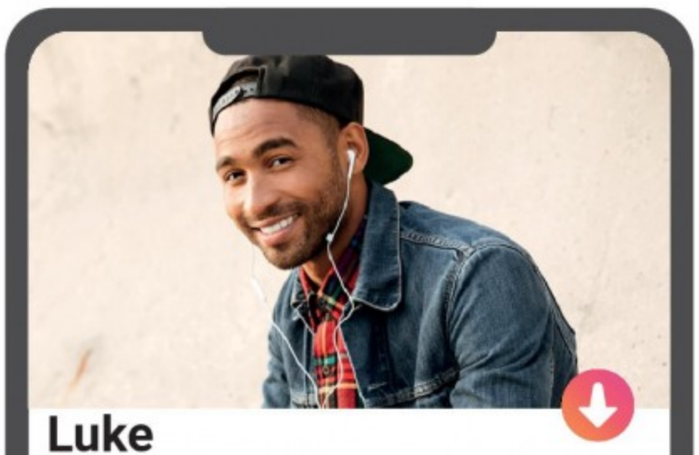
**Angie**
♥ I love buying clothes.
★ I like going to the movies.
✕ I don't like reading.



**Daniel**
♥ I love cooking.
★ I like camping.
✕ I don't like watching TV.



**Adriana**
♥ I love walking in the mountains.
★ I like good food.
✕ ✕ I hate shopping.



**Luke**
♥ I love shopping.
★ I like watching movies.
✕ I don't like sports.

**b** Number the verbs 1–4, from very positive (1) to very negative (4).

☐ don't like ☐ hate ☐ like ☐ love

**c** G **Grammar Bank 8B** *p.106*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
/ʊ/, /u/, and /ŋ/, sentence rhythm

**a** 8.13 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | **bull** | book cook look good |
|  | **boot** | too food soon school |
|  | **singer** | doing going swimming thing |

**b** 8.14 Listen and repeat the conversation. Practice it in pairs. Copy the sounds and rhythm.

**A** I **love cooking**. **What** about **you**?
**B** I **like cooking, too**.
**A** Do you **like reading books**?
**B** **Yes**, I **like reading good books**.
**A** Do you **like traveling**?
**B** **Yes**, I **do**. I **love traveling**!
**A** Are you **single**?
**B** **No, sorry**.

**c** In pairs, talk about the activities in **Vocabulary Bank** Activities *p.128*. Use *love*, *like*, *don't like*, or *hate*.

*I love buying clothes. What about you?*

*Me too! I hate camping. What about you?*

## 4 READING & WRITING

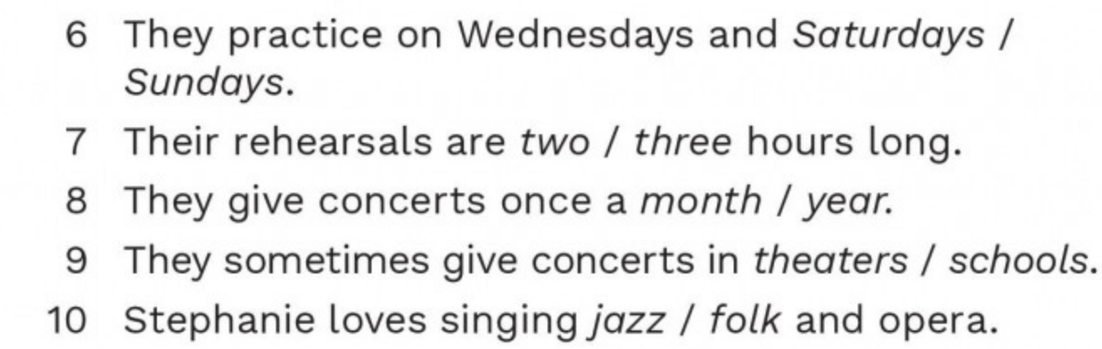
**a** Read the posts and complete the missing activities.

**b** 8.15 Listen and check. Check (✓) two people you agree with.

**c** Compare with a partner. Did you choose the same people?

**d** Write your answer to the two questions and give it to your teacher. Play *Guess who?*

## 5 LISTENING



**a** Video Watch *Singing in a choir.* Do they sing a) a pop song, b) a folk song, c) a jazz song? Do you like it? Do you think the choir sings well?

**b** Watch again. Then circle the correct option in each sentence.

1 The choir's name is The *Oxford* / *Cambridge* Gargoyles.
2 You sometimes see gargoyles on *old* / *modern* buildings.
3 The choir has *thirteen* / *fifteen* members.
4 They are all in *high school* / *college*.
5 All the members interviewed study *languages* / *music* except one.
6 They practice on Wednesdays and *Saturdays* / *Sundays*.
7 Their rehearsals are *two* / *three* hours long.
8 They give concerts once a *month* / *year*.
9 They sometimes give concerts in *theaters* / *schools*.
10 Stephanie loves singing *jazz* / *folk* and opera.
11 Alex thinks that everyone can sing except his *father* / *mother*.
12 Tegan prefers singing *solo* / *in a group*.

## What do you like doing alone? What do you like doing with friends?

**Chris** I like **c**ooking alone. I don't like having other people in the kitchen. But I like [1]**e**_____ with friends, especially when I'm out. I don't like being alone in a restaurant. #aloneorwithfriends

**Sarah** I don't like [2]**tr**_____ alone. I prefer going on vacation with friends. But they need to be the right friends! #aloneorwithfriends

**Mike** I like [3]**sh**_____ with friends. When I go alone, I usually buy things that look horrible on me. I need a second opinion! #aloneorwithfriends

**Greta** I love [4]**d**_____ alone at home to really old music from the 70s, like ABBA. But I never dance with other people at parties because I know I'm a terrible dancer. #aloneorwithfriends

**Veronica** I like [5]**w**_____ movies with friends. When the movie ends, we can talk about it, and I like having someone with me so we can be happy or frightened together! #aloneorwithfriends

**Becca** I like [6]**r**_____ alone. It helps me to concentrate and it's very peaceful! But I prefer [7]**g**_____ for walks with other people because I like walking and talking. #aloneorwithfriends

**Andy** I like [8]**dr**_____ alone. I love [9]**l**_____ to my favorite music in the car and [10]**s**_____ very loudly – but with the windows closed, of course! #aloneorwithfriends



# 7&8 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

**Circle** a or b.

___'s your name?
a Who b What

1 **A** ___ play any sports or exercise?
**B** No, I hate sports.
a Do you b Are you

2 What music ___?
a you like b do you like

3 Where's ___?
a your mother from b from your mother

4 ___ meat?
a Your sister eats b Does your sister eat

5 The meeting's at 6:00. ___ late.
a Don't be b Not be

6 We're lost. Please help ___.
a us b our

7 My brother has a new girlfriend, but I don't like ___ very much.
a him b her

8 They're beautiful shoes. I love ___.
a it b them

9 ___ park here?
a Can I b Do I can

10 Sorry, you ___ photos here.
a can't to take b can't take

11 **A** Can they come to dinner tomorrow?
**B** No, they ___.
a can't b don't

12 ___ Kate sit here?
a Can b Cans

13 Do you like ___?
a read b reading

14 I don't like ___ up early.
a geting b getting

15 I hate ___ on the weekend.
a studying b studing

## VOCABULARY

**a** Complete the verbs.

For my mom's birthday, I always **m**ake a big chocolate cake.

1 I always **pl**_____ video games after school.
2 Can I **p**_____ by credit card?
3 On Friday night, we **st**_____ at home and **r**_____ because we are usually very tired.
4 I sometimes **m**_____ my friends after work and we **g**_____ to the movies.
5 Mary doesn't usually **g**_____ to the beach because she can't **sw**_____.
6 I **d**_____ yoga and I **pl**_____ tennis every week.

**b** Write the next word.

first, second, third

1 fifth, sixth, _____
2 tenth, eleventh, _____
3 eighteenth, nineteenth, _____
4 twenty-ninth, thirtieth, _____
5 January, February, _____
6 March, April, _____
7 May, June, _____
8 September, October, _____

**c** Write the activities.





riding a bike 1 _____ 2 _____





3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____




6 _____ 7 _____

**d** **8.16 Words and phrases to learn** Files 7&8 *p.131–2* Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

## PRONUNCIATION

**a** Write the words for the sound pictures.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| |  bike | 3 |  |
| 1 |  | 4 |  |
| 2 |  | 5 |  |

**b** **Sound Bank** *p.134–5* Look at more words with the sounds in **a**, and these sounds:

Practice saying the example words.

**c** Underline the stressed syllable.

re|lax
1 thir|ti|eth
2 Jan|u|ar|y
3 Ju|ly
4 se|ven|teenth
5 sin|gle

## Can you understand this text?

**a** Read the website and match the headings.

Professional sports  Reading Terminal Market
The Philadelphia Museum of Art

### Come to Philadelphia and be inspired!

When you are on vacation in the US, don't forget to visit Philadelphia in the state of Pennsylvania. If you like visiting places of interest, watching sports, or eating out, we have something for everybody!

1 _____

The museum is situated in beautiful Fairmount Park and has an amazing collection of art. It is also famous for the "Rocky Steps" and "Rocky Statue" from the *Rocky* movie franchise, starring Sylvester Stallone. Bring your camera and act out the famous movie scene of Rocky running up the museum steps to train for his fight.

2 _____

Philadelphia is famous for its sports teams, like the Eagles (American football), the Phillies (baseball), the Sixers (basketball), and the Flyers (ice hockey). Their stadiums and arena are all in the same area. Getting to a game can be difficult, so take the train. Don't drive!

3 _____

This is one of Philadelphia's oldest attractions. Here you can try all kinds of different local food, and if you like cooking, you can buy wonderful products to take home. You can also listen to live music. The market is open every day except on some holidays.



**b** Read again and check (✓) the information you can find in the text.

1 The Philadelphia Museum of Art is very old.
2 It's OK to take pictures on the "Rocky Steps."
3 A ticket for an Eagles game is very expensive.
4 You can't drive to a professional sports game.
5 You can buy very cheap food in the market.
6 Musicians play in the market.
7 You can go to the market on a Tuesday.

## Can you understand these people?




Spencer  Sahil  Monica




Brian  Richard

Video Watch and answer the questions.

1 Spencer usually ___ in the evening.
a plays sports
b does housework
c makes dinner

2 Sahil likes watching ___ at the movie theater.
a comedies
b action movies
c animated movies

3 Monica's birthday is on ___.
a May 1st  b May 5th  c May 15th

4 Brian takes the train to work ___.
a for 2 hours in each direction
b two days a week
c for 20 minutes in each direction

5 One thing Richard likes doing on the weekend is ___.
a running  b making meals  c buying clothes

## Can you say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

| Can you...? | Yes, I can. |
|---|---|
| 1 talk about what you do in your free time | ☐ |
| 2 give instructions and orders, e.g., "Sit down." | ☐ |
| 3 talk about movies and actors that you like | ☐ |
| 4 say the date | ☐ |
| 5 say what people can / can't do in your town | ☐ |
| 6 talk about activities you like / love / hate doing | ☐ |

# 9A What are they *really* doing?

- G present continuous
- V common verb phrases 2: traveling
- P sentence rhythm

*What are you doing?* *I'm playing a video game.*

## 1 GRAMMAR present continuous




**a** 9.1 Amy is in Mexico on business. Her husband and family are at home in the US. Read and listen to the conversation. Underline three things Tony says that are not true.

**Amy** Hello? Tony?
**Tony** Oh, hi, honey. How's Mexico City?
**Amy** Good, good. I'm staying in a nice hotel – but it's raining. Can you hear it?
**Tony** Yes, yes, I can.
**Amy** How are the children?
**Tony** Oh, they're fine.
**Amy** Where are they? What are they doing?
**Tony** Lily's in the living room. She's doing her homework.
**Amy** And Matt and Josh?
**Tony** They're in their bedroom. They're reading.
**Amy** I think I can hear them. Are you sure they're reading?
**Tony** Yes, yes. That noise is the TV. Your mother's watching a movie.
**Amy** What about you? Are you OK?
**Tony** I'm fine. I'm making dinner – fish and vegetables.
**Amy** Oh, great! Very healthy. OK, honey, I need to go now. See you on Tuesday.
**Tony** Have a good day tomorrow. Bye.

**b** Look at the highlighted verbs in the conversation. Then read the rule below and circle the correct option.

We use the present continuous (*am / is / are* + verb + *-ing*) to talk about *every day / now*.

**c** G **Grammar Bank 9A** *p.108*

**d** 9.3 Listen. What's the man doing now?

1 *He's reading a story.*

**e** Think about your family and friends. Where do you think they are now? What do you think they are doing?

*I think my brother's in his bedroom. He's sleeping.*

## 2 PRONUNCIATION sentence rhythm

**a** 9.4 Listen and repeat the conversation.

A **What** are you **doing**?
B I'm **making dinner**.
A Are the **children doing** their **homework**?
B **No**, they **aren't**. They're **watching TV**.
A **What's** your **mother doing**?
B She's **helping** me.

**b** Practice the conversation in **2a** with a partner.

**c** Video Watch the video. What are they doing?



**d** Look at the grid at the end of the video. Ask and answer questions.

*What's she doing?* *She's...*

## 3 VOCABULARY & LISTENING common verb phrases 2: traveling

**a** Look at the picture of Amy in **1**. Complete the missing verbs.

1 Amy is **st**_____ in a hotel.
2 She's **c**_____ her husband.

**b** **Vocabulary Bank** Common verb phrases 2 *p.126* Do Part 2.

**c** 9.6 Listen to four conversations. What are the people doing?

1 The man and the woman are _____.
2 The woman is _____.
3 The man _____.
4 The man and the woman _____.

**d** Listen again and circle the correct answer.

1 Henry's present is a *soccer ball* / *soccer shirt* and Jessica's is a *bag* / *T-shirt*.
2 They *need* / *don't need* their swimming things because the hotel *is* / *isn't* near the beach.
3 The man needs a *small* / *big* car for *three* / *five* days.
4 The first bus is a number *23* / *25*. They are waiting for a number *13* / *30*.

## 4 READING

**a** Mike and Lina are going to the movies together. Read Mike's messages to Lina. Then match her answers to each message 1–5.

1 ~ Hi. I'm just leaving the house now.
2 ~ No, I'm not. I'm riding my bike. See you in 20 minutes?
3 ~ Where are you? I'm at the movie theater, but I can't see you. I'm waiting outside.
4 ~ It's really cold outside. I'm going in.
5 ~ I'm standing near the box office. I'm wearing a black jacket. Can you see me?

~ I'm arriving at the movie theater now. Where are you? A

~ Me too. I'm walking to the bus stop. Are you taking the bus, too? B

~ Sorry, we're in a lot of traffic. There in five minutes. C

~ OK. See you then. D

~ Yes, I can! Can you see me? I'm walking towards you now! E

**b** 9.7 Listen and check.

**c** Read the messages again. Find a word or phrase that means:

1 the opposite of *inside*: _____
2 a lot of cars, buses, etc.: a lot of _____
3 the place where you buy movie tickets: _____
4 to walk in the direction of somebody: to walk _____ somebody

**d** 9.8 Listen and check.

## 5 SPEAKING

**Communication** The same or different? **A** *p.80* **B** *p.84* Say what the people are doing in the pictures.

# 9B Watching and waiting

G present continuous or simple present?
V clothes
P /ər/, other vowel sounds

*What are you doing today?* *I usually go to the office, but today I'm watching somebody.*

## 1 READING

**a** Look at the two photos in the article. Which photo do you think shows a private investigator on a normal day?

**b** 9.9 Read and listen to the article by Matt, a private investigator, and check. Do you think he a) loves, b) likes, c) doesn't like his job?

**c** Read the article again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Matt doesn't usually wear a suit when he goes to his office.
2 He works from 9:00 to 5:00.
3 He meets new clients online.
4 Some of his jobs are for companies.
5 Today, Matt is watching a client.
6 He's wearing sunglasses because it's very hot.
7 When he's working on the street, it's always exciting.
8 The life of a real private investigator is different from the life of those in movies.

**d** Would you like to be a private investigator?

# A day in the life of… a private investigator



**People think a private investigator's job is exciting, but is it really true? See what you think.**

On a typical day, I get up early and I go to my office. I don't need to wear a suit. I usually wear a shirt and pants. I start work at about 9:00. I sit at my desk and work at my computer. I answer phone calls. I speak to colleagues. Then, at about 6:00, I finish work and go home.

The calls are usually from clients – new clients or current clients. With a new client, first I usually meet them in person in our office. Some clients are private individuals. Perhaps they want us to find a missing person. Other clients are companies. Perhaps they want us to check if an employee is really sick or not. Then we need to investigate the problem. We usually do this online. Clients pay for each day we work, and they don't want to pay a lot of money, so we try to work fast.

But sometimes our work is different, and today is one of those days. I'm not working in the office, I'm working on the street. I'm sitting in my car with my camera. I'm watching and waiting. I'm hoping to see a man. He lives in the building across the street, and my client wants me to follow him. I'm wearing a jacket, and I'm wearing sunglasses because I don't want the man to see my face. Is this more exciting than being in the office? Sometimes. But waiting in a car is often boring, and it's a long day, not just from 9:00 to 6:00. Sometimes it's difficult to stay awake!

The life of a private investigator is not like in movies and on TV. But each case is different, and solving a case feels great.



**Glossary**
**my colleague** a person I work with
**my client** a person who pays me to do a job
**my employee** a person who works for me

## 2 GRAMMAR present continuous or simple present?

**a** Look at two sentences about Matt. Complete the sentences with the simple present or present continuous of *work* and *wear*.

He usually [1]works in an office, but today he [2]_____ on the street. He usually [3]_____ a shirt and pants. Today he [4]_____ a jacket and sunglasses, too.

**b** 9.10 Listen and check.

**c** Complete the rules with *every day* and *today / now*.

Use the simple present to talk about _____.
Use the present continuous to talk about _____.

**d** G **Grammar Bank 9B** *p.108*

## 3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
clothes; /ər/, other vowel sounds

**a** Look at some clothes words from the article in **1**. Match them to the photos.

a jacket | pants | a suit | a shirt



**b** **Vocabulary Bank** Clothes *p.129*

**c** **9.13** Listen and repeat the sound and words.

| | |
|---|---|
| **bird** | shirt skirt T-shirt<br>person early work |

**d** Put the clothes words in the correct column.

cap coat dress hat jacket jeans
shoes sneakers suit sweater

| egg | boot | cat | phone | tree |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |

**e** **9.14** Listen and check.

**f** Practice saying the sentences.

**I'm wearing...**

a shirt and a skirt
a red sweater
a new suit
an old coat
a black jacket
blue shoes
clean jeans
green sneakers

**g** Video Watch the video. You are a private investigator and you are watching people. What are they wearing?

1 She's wearing an orange...




## 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING




**a** Look at the photos and read about Neah. Do high school and college students do internships in your country?

In the US, high school and college students can do internships to get work experience. Neah is working as a fashion intern at a clothing store called Rue21 in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania.

**b** **9.15** Listen to an interview with Neah. Is she positive or negative about her work experience?

**c** Listen again and answer the questions.

1 What kinds of clothes does Rue21 have?
2 What does Neah do in the store?
3 What does Neah like about the job?
4 What doesn't she like?
5 What can Neah do when she ends her internship?
6 Where are the clothes she is wearing today from?

**d** Talk to a partner.

1 What are you wearing today?
2 What colors do you like wearing?
3 What clothes do you usually wear...?
– in the summer
– in the winter
– to work / school
– for a party

PRACTICAL ENGLISH 5

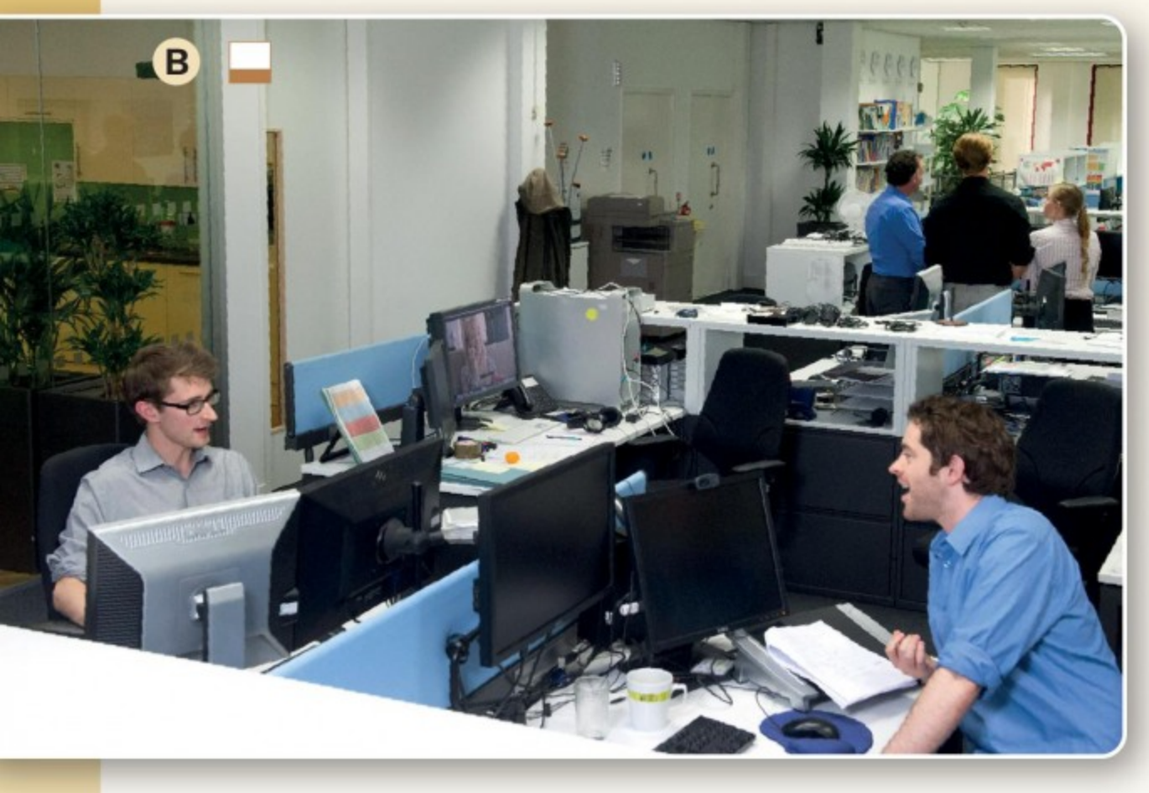
# Would you like to come?

Practical English | inviting and offering | P sentence rhythm

## 1 INVITING AND OFFERING

**a** Video Watch *Inviting and offering*. Number the photos 1–3.







**b** Watch again. Complete the conversations with a word or time from the lists.

birthday 4:00 lunch Sunday 3:30 two

1
**Rob** Hey, Alan. Would you like to come to the match with me on [1]_____? It's Norwich against Chelsea, and I have [2]_____ tickets.
**Alan** Wow! What time's the match?
**Rob** It's at [3]_____.
**Alan** Yeah, I'd love to. Thanks.
**Rob** Would you like to meet for [4]_____ first?
**Alan** Sorry, I can't. It's my mum's [5]_____, and I need to have lunch with her. But I can meet you there.
**Rob** Great. Let's meet at [6]_____ at the entrance to the Tube station.
**Alan** Fine. See you there.

burger coffee hungry know milk water

2
**Alan** They are playing really badly. I hope the second half is better.
**Rob** Me too. I [7]_____ they can win. Would you like a [8]_____?
**Alan** No, thanks. I'm not very [9]_____.
**Rob** How about a [10]_____?
**Alan** Yeah, great.

**Rob** A burger and a [11]_____, please.
**Alan** And I'd like a coffee.
**Server** [12]_____ and sugar?
**Alan** Yes, please.

**Glossary**
**match** (sports) a game between two people or teams
**the entrance** the door where you go into a place
**the Tube** the London subway

**c** Look at the highlighted phrases in the conversations. What do you think *Would you like?* and *I'd like* mean?

### Would you like...?

***Would you like* + noun**
*Would you like a burger?*
*Yes, please. / No, thanks.*
***I'd like* (= *I would like*) + noun**
*I'd like a burger, please.*
*I'd like a coffee, please.*
***Would you like to* + verb**
*Would you like to come to the match?*
*Yes, I'd love to. / Sorry, I can't.*
**! Compare**
*Do you like dancing?* = in general
*Would you like to dance?* = invitation

## 2 PRONUNCIATION sentence rhythm

**a** 9.16 Listen and repeat.

*a **pizza**?*

↘ ***like** a **pizza**?*

↘ *Would you **like** a **pizza**?*

***see** a **movie**?*

↘ *to **see** a **movie**?*

↘ *Would you **like** to **see** a **movie**?*

**b** Work in pairs. Use the photos. Ask a partner.

*Would you like a...?*









*Would you like to go to a...?*









**c** In pairs, practice the conversations in **1b**. Change roles.

## 3 MEETING AN OLD FRIEND



**a** Video Watch *Meeting an old friend*. Jenny meets her ex-boyfriend Steve, a journalist, on the street. What three things does Steve invite Jenny to do?

**b** Watch again. Then circle the correct answer.

1 Jenny is looking *well* / *tired*.
2 It's *raining* / *starting to rain* on the street.
3 Jenny's meeting is in *half an hour* / *an hour*.
4 Jenny *can* / *can't* go to the exhibition.
5 Jenny thinks it *is* / *isn't* a good idea to meet Steve one evening.

## 4 USEFUL PHRASES

Video Watch and repeat the useful phrases.

Would you like to come to the match with me on Sunday?
Yeah, I'd love to.
Let's meet at half past three.
See you there.
Would you like a burger?
How about a coffee?
I'd like to ask you something.
I don't think it's a good idea.

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING an email

**a** 9.17 Listen and repeat the conversations. Then practice them with a partner.

1 A Would you like to come to a party at my house?
B Yes, I'd love to. Thanks! When is it?
A It's on Friday at 8:00.
B Great! See you there.

2 A Would you like to come to a party on Saturday?
B Sorry, I can't. I'm busy on Saturday night.

**b** Imagine it's your party. Choose a day and time. Invite your partner. Can he / she come?

**c** Invite the other students in your class. How many people can come?

**d** W Writing Bank 4 *p.87* Write an email to invite someone to do something.

# 10A A room with a view

G *there's a... / there are some...*
V hotels; *in, on, under*
P /ɪr/ and /ɛr/

*Is there Wi-Fi?* *Yes, there is. There's Wi-Fi in every room in the hotel.*

## 1 READING & VOCABULARY hotels

**a** 10.1 Read and listen to the tourist information about Vermont and Lake Champlain. Would you like to go to Vermont? What would you like to see and do there?

## VISIT VERMONT



**Vermont is one of the top tourist destinations in the US, with 140 mountain peaks, 50 ski areas, 46 lakes, interesting museums, and beautiful cities and towns. There's something for visitors of all ages.**

### WHY LAKE CHAMPLAIN?

Lake Champlain is a 125-mile-long lake between the states of Vermont and New York – and it's perfect for vacations.

You can take a boat trip on the lake and visit the ECHO, Leahy Center for Lake Champlain to find out all about the lake and "Champ," the monster.

One of the most famous ice-cream makers in the US, Ben and Jerry's, is very close to the lake shore.

There are also wonderful places for walking or riding a bike nearby.




### ACCOMMODATIONS

Stay at the Holiday Hotel. It's the perfect place for a great view of the lake.






**THE HOLIDAY HOTEL**

*A friendly hotel with fantastic views of Lake Champlain.*

www.holidayhotelvt.net

**b** Look at the hotel bedroom. Match the words to 1–5.

a bed | the floor | a lamp | a pillow | a window

**c** V **Vocabulary Bank** Hotels *p.130*

## 2 GRAMMAR *there's a... / there are some...*

**a** 10.4 Louisa and Eric are tourists on vacation in Vermont. They arrive at the Holiday Hotel. Listen to the conversation. Mark with a ✓ the things the hotel has and with an ✗ the things it doesn't have.

✗ an elevator | a good view | Wi-Fi
a restaurant | a coffee shop | a store



**b** Listen again and read the conversation. Then look at the highlighted phrases and choose a or b to complete rules 1–3 below.

**Eric** Hello. Do you have a room for tonight?
**Receptionist** Let's see. Yes, there's a room on the second floor.
**Louisa** Great. Can we see it?
**R** Of course. Come with me.
**E** Is there an elevator?
**R** An elevator? I'm sorry. No, there isn't. But I can help you with your bags.

**R** This is the room.
**L** It's beautiful. I love it!
**E** Yes, and there's a great view of Lake Champlain. Is there Wi-Fi?
**R** Yes, there is. The password is "Champlain."
**E** Is there a restaurant? We're very hungry.
**R** No, there isn't a restaurant. But you can have a sandwich in the coffee shop, or there are some cafés in town.
**L** Are there any stores near here?
**R** No, there aren't any stores near the hotel.
**E** OK, thanks. Oh, I have one more question.
**R** Yes?
**E** Is there really a monster in Lake Champlain?
**R** Well, some people say there is and some people say there isn't. Enjoy your stay. Ah, breakfast is at 7:00.

1 Use *there's a / an* + ___.
a singular nouns b plural nouns
2 Use *there are some* + ___.
a singular nouns b plural nouns
3 Use *any* (not *some*) in ___.
a affirmative statements
b negative statements and questions

**c** **Grammar Bank 10A** *p.110*

**d** Practice the conversation in **b** in groups of three.

**e** 10.6 Listen. What do Louisa and Eric see? What do they do? Do you think that there's a monster in the lake?

**f** In pairs, write true [+] or [−] sentences.

**Your classroom**
TV pictures windows board computer chairs dictionaries

**Your school**
library café parking lot yard

*There's a TV.* *There are some pictures.*
*There aren't any windows.*

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɪr/ and /ɛr/

**a** 10.7 Listen and repeat the sounds and words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ɪr | ear | near here |
| ɛr | chair | wear there |

**Same spelling, different sound**
The same letters can have different pronunciations. For example, *ere* and *ear* can be /ɪr/, e.g., *here*, *near*, or /ɛr/, e.g., *there*, *wear*.

**b** 10.8 Listen and write the words in the correct group in **a**.

airport dear hair hear repair
their very we're where year

**c** 10.9 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

**d** Practice saying the sentences.

Here's your coffee, dear. There's a chair over there.
It's near the end of the year. Where's the airport?

## 4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING *in, on, under*

**a** Write *in*, *on*, or *under* for pictures 1–3.



1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____

**b** In pairs, ask and answer questions about the remote control.

1 *Where's the remote control?* *It's on the table.*



**c** **Communication** Is there a TV? Where is it? **A** *p.81* **B** *p.85* Ask and answer about things in hotel rooms.

# 10B Where was he?

G simple past: *be*
V *in*, *on*, *at*
P *was* and *were*, sentence rhythm

***Where were you?*** ***I was at home.***

## 1 GRAMMAR simple past: *be*




**a** Last night there was a robbery in a bank. Jason Brown is a suspect. Look at the photo. Which person is Jason, and which person is a detective?

**b** 10.10 Listen to the interview. Fill in the blanks.

**D** Where were you at [1]_____ o'clock last night?
**J** I was at [2]_____.
**D** You weren't at [3]_____. Your [4]_____ says you were out. She was at home alone.
**J** Oh, yes, I remember now. I was at a [5]_____.
**D** Were you [6]_____?
**J** No, I wasn't. I was with a [7]_____. Walter Miller. You can ask him.

**c** Complete the chart.

| simple past: *be* | |
|---|---|
| **present** | **past** |
| I'**m** at home. | I [1]_____ at home. |
| You **aren't** at home. | You [2]_____ at home. |
| **Are** you alone? | [3]_____ you alone? |
| No, I'**m** not. | No, I [4]_____. |

**d** G **Grammar Bank 10B** *p.110*

**e** 10.12 Listen and say the sentences in the past.

1 She's a teacher. *She was a teacher.*

## 2 LISTENING

**a** 10.13 Listen to the detective interviewing Jason's friend, Walter. Complete the information.

**Name:** Walter Miller

**Job:** [1]_____

**Address:** [2]_____ Market Street

Walter knows Jason because they were [3]_____ together.

At 5:00 yesterday afternoon, he was in his [4]_____.

At 7:00, he was in the [5]_____ restaurant on South [6]_____.

He was with Jason. His [7]_____ and [8]_____ were there, too.

**b** Listen again. Why does the detective think that Walter's story isn't true?

## 3 VOCABULARY *in*, *on*, *at*

**a** 10.14 The next day Jason and Walter were in prison. But where was Jason's wife? Listen and check. Complete the sentences.

First, she was on a **pl**_____. Then she was in a **h**_____, in **C**_____.

**b** Complete the chart with *in*, *on*, or *at*.

| ***Where were you yesterday at 7:00 p.m.?*** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I was | [1]_____ | [2]_____ | [3]_____ |
| | home<br>work<br>school<br>college | bed<br>New York<br>my car<br>the kitchen<br>the park<br>a meeting<br>a taxi<br>a restaurant<br>a museum<br>a shopping mall<br>a hotel | a bus<br>a train<br>a plane<br>the beach<br>the street |

**c** 10.15 Listen and check. Repeat the sentences.



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE



**d** Video Watch the video of Maisie's photos from yesterday. Where was she?

**e** In pairs, use the grid. Ask and answer about Maisie.

| | |
|---|---|
| *1 Where was she?* | *She was...* |

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

*was* and *were*, sentence rhythm

**a** 10.16 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm.

**A** **Where** were you at **seven o'clock yesterday morning**?
**B** I was at **home**.
**A** Were you in **bed**?
**B** **Yes**, I **was**.
**A** **Where** were you at **ten o'clock**?
**B** I was in a **café** with **friends**.
**A** Were you **there** all **morning**?
**B** **No**, we **weren't**. We were **there** for an **hour**.

**b** With a partner, ask and answer the questions.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Where were you yesterday at | 7:00 / 10:00 | in the morning? |
| 2 | Where were you yesterday at | 4:00 / 5:30 | in the afternoon? |
| 3 | Where were you at | 10:00 / 11:30 | last night? |
| 4 | Where were you last | Friday / Saturday | night? |

## 5 LISTENING




**a** Video Watch *A building with a past*. What kind of building is it? Where is it? Why is it famous?

**Glossary**
**safe deposit box** a metal box for keeping valuable things
**vault** a room with strong walls for keeping money, e.g., in a bank

**b** Watch again. Then complete the sentences with a word from the list.

center hotel movie park restaurants
robbery rooms shows

1 The Pierre Hotel is in the _____ of New York City.
2 The hotel has fantastic views of Central _____.
3 The hotel often appears in TV _____.
4 Many famous _____ stars stayed in the hotel.
5 In 1972, there was a big _____ at the hotel.
6 The robbers were in the _____ for 2.5 hours.
7 The hotel has three very nice _____.
8 There are 189 _____ in the hotel.

**c** Would you like to stay at the hotel? Why (not)?



# 9&10 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

**Circle** a or b.

___'s your name?
a Who b What

1 Are you ___ right now?
a work b working

2 She ___ staying in a very good hotel.
a isn't b doesn't

3 He ___ his homework now.
a doing b 's doing

4 **A** ___ raining?
**B** No, it isn't.
a Is it b It's

5 Can you talk now, or ___?
a are you driving b do you drive

6 ___ to work by train?
a Do you usually go
b Are you usually going

7 I usually wear pants, but today ___ a skirt.
a I wear b I'm wearing

8 ___ two beds in the room.
a There is b There are

9 There aren't ___ windows.
a some b any

10 ___ any towels in the bathroom?
a Are there b There are

11 Is there a swimming pool? Yes, ___.
a there's b there is

12 It ___ very hot last summer.
a was b were

13 Where ___ you yesterday at six o'clock?
a was b were

14 Karen ___ at school yesterday.
a wasn't b not was

15 ___ at home last night?
a They were b Were they

## VOCABULARY

**a** Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

arriving calling carrying phoning ~~staying~~ waiting wearing

We're staying in a beautiful hotel in the mountains.

1 **A** What are you doing here?
**B** I'm _____ for my girlfriend. She's late.

2 **A** Who are you _____? **B** My mother. It's her birthday.

3 Go and help that woman. She's _____ a very big suitcase.

4 Look! The train's _____. Can you see it?

5 Why are you _____ sunglasses? It's 11:00 in the evening!

**b** Write the clothes.


shoes


1 _____


2 _____


3 _____


4 _____


5 _____


6 _____


7 _____

**c** Complete the words.

Would you like to have dinner in the hotel **r**estaurant?

1 When you arrive at a hotel, you go to **r**_____ to check in.

2 You're in room 1122. Take the **e**_____ to the 11th floor.

3 I want to buy some presents. Is there a **g**_____ **sh**_____?

4 The **b**_____'s small. There's a shower, but there isn't a bathtub.

5 You can leave your car in the hotel **p**_____ **l**_____.

**d** Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with *in*, *on*, or *under*.

The book is on the chair.

1 The suitcase is _____ the bed.

2 The laptop is _____ the bed.

3 The lamps are _____ the tables.

4 The boots are _____ the chair.

5 The bags are _____ the closet.



**e** Complete with *at*, *in*, or *on*.

Oh no! The keys are in my car.

1 **A** Where's your mother? **B** I think she's _____ the kitchen.

2 **A** Mike? It's Tim. **B** Sorry, I can't hear you. I'm _____ a train.

3 **A** Is John here today?
**B** No, he's _____ home. One of his children isn't well.

**f** **10.17 Words and phrases to learn** Files 9&10 *p.132* Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



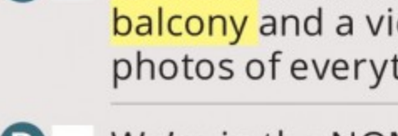
MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## PRONUNCIATION

**a** Write the words for the sound pictures.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  bike | 2  | 4  |
| 1  | 3  | 5  |

**b** **Sound Bank** *p.134–5* Look at more words with the sounds in **a**, and these sounds:



Practice saying the example words.

**c** Underline the stressed syllable.

1 tra|vel
2 a|rrive
3 re|stau|rant
4 clo|set
5 re|cep|tion

## Can you understand this text?

**a** Jenna and Max are going to New Orleans for the weekend. Read Jenna's posts and number them 1–6.

**Jenna** @JennaJenna

A ☐ Our first dinner! 🙂 We're having an amazing dinner in a restaurant in the French Quarter, near the hotel. I love the gumbo (a thick fish soup) and the rice and beans.

B ☐ Our last morning! I don't want to go home! 😕 Maybe I can get a job in New Orleans?

C ☐ We're now at the hotel. Our room's great. There's a balcony and a view of Louis Armstrong Park! I'm taking photos of everything for my blog.

D ☐ We're in the NOMA museum, looking at Robert Indiana's "LOVE" sculpture. I love it! Then we're going to the river for our first lunch here! ☀️

E ☐ The gumbo was great. We're now lying on our bed watching a football game – the New Orleans Saints and the Tampa Bay Buccaneers. Come on, New Orleans! But Max prefers Tampa Bay...

F ☐ We're waiting for the taxi to arrive and feeling a little nervous! Our flight's at 10:30. Please hurry, taxi driver! New Orleans, here we come!

**b** Match the photos to the highlighted phrases in the posts.






## Can you understand these people?


Daniel


Julie


Jayna


Rytis


Spencer

**Video** Watch and answer the questions.

1 Today Daniel is ___ in New York.
- a sightseeing with a friend
- b shopping with his family
- c eating out with friends

2 Julie usually wears ___ for work.
- a shorts and a top
- b a skirt and a sweater
- c a skirt and a top

3 Jayna would like to live in England because she likes ___.
- a its people
- b the food
- c its history

4 Rytis is ___.
- a sleeping at his parents' home
- b staying in a hotel
- c camping with friends

5 Last night at 10 o'clock, Spencer was ___.
- a at home
- b in a hotel
- c on a plane

## Can you say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

| Can you...? | Yes, I can. |
|---|---|
| 1 talk about what you're doing now | ☐ |
| 2 say what you're wearing | ☐ |
| 3 say what you would like to do | ☐ |
| 4 identify things in a hotel room | ☐ |
| 5 ask about facilities in a hotel | ☐ |
| 6 say where you were yesterday, last night, etc. | ☐ |

# 11A A new life in the US

G simple past: regular verbs
V regular verbs
P regular simple past endings

*Did you decide to go to the US?* *Yes, we did. We wanted to live abroad.*

## 1 GRAMMAR
simple past: regular verbs

**a** 11.1 Read and listen to Dominic. Choose a or b.




My wife and I always wanted to live abroad. But Miriam and I both work in the UK – she's a doctor and I'm a designer – and we have two small children, Sacha and Elena. Then an American university, Duke, in Durham, North Carolina, asked Miriam to go and work there for a year. At first, we weren't sure what to do. There were so many questions. What about Sacha's school? What do we do with our house? But finally, we decided to go!

1 Dominic and his wife wanted to live _____.
   a in another country
   b in another place in their country
2 Duke University offered _____ a job in the US.
   a Dominic
   b Miriam
3 In the beginning, they _____ sure if they wanted to go.
   a were
   b weren't



















**b** 11.2 Match the sentences to photos A–F. Then listen and check.

1 ___ We rented a house near the university.
2 ___ We booked our flights. It was a long trip!
3 ___ We invited our friends to a restaurant to say goodbye.
4 ___ We packed seven heavy suitcases.
5 ___ The children didn't want to sleep on the plane. Sacha played with toys and Elena looked at books.
6 ___ When we arrived in North Carolina, we were very tired!

**c** Look at the highlighted verbs in sentences 1–6 and complete the chart. What letters do you add to the verb to make the affirmative [+] past form? How do you make the negative [–]?

| Simple past: regular verbs | |
|---|---|
| **present** | **past** |
| we book | We _____ our flights. |
| we arrive | We _____ in North Carolina. |
| they don't want | They _____ want to sleep. |

**d** G **Grammar Bank 11A** *p.112*

**e** In pairs, ask and answer questions with *Did...?* about the story in **a** and **b**. Answer *Yes, he / she / it / they did.* **OR** *No, he / she / it / they didn't.*

1 / Dominic and Miriam want to live abroad?
2 / Duke University offer Dominic a job?
3 / they invite their friends to their house?
4 / the children want to sleep on the plane?
5 / Sacha play with toys on the plane?
6 / Elena play with Sacha?

*Did Dominic and Miriam want to live abroad?* *Yes, they did.*



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## 2 PRONUNCIATION
regular simple past endings

**a** 11.4 Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | **d**og | We arriv**ed** in North Carolina.<br>Sacha play**ed** with toys. |
|  | **t**ie | We book**ed** our flights.<br>Elena look**ed** at books.<br>We pack**ed** seven heavy suitcases. |
| /ɪd/ | | We rent**ed** a house near the university.<br>We invit**ed** our friends to a restaurant. |

**b** Cover the sentences in **1b**. Look at photo A and say the sentence. Do the same for photos B–F.

## 3 SPEAKING

**a** Work with a partner.

**A** Make + or − true sentences about you with the phrases below. Add more information.

*I listened to the radio this morning in the car. I didn't walk to work.*

**B** Mark with a ✓ the things your partner did and with an ✗ the things he / she didn't do.

| | |
|---|---|
| **this morning** | listen to the radio |
| | walk to work / school |
| | arrive late at work / school |
| **last night** | call a friend |
| | watch TV |
| | study English |
| **last weekend** | play a sport / game |
| | cook lunch / dinner |
| | invite friends for lunch |

**b** Change roles.

**c** Work with a new partner. Ask and answer about his / her old partner.

*Did Anna listen to the radio this morning?*

*Yes, she did. She listened to it in the car.*

*Did she walk to work?* *No, she didn't.*

## 4 READING & LISTENING

**a** 11.5 Read and listen to part of Dominic's blog about their life in the US. What did they like about the US? What was a problem for them?




At first, living in the US was very difficult. We missed our friends and family, and we didn't like the food. We also needed to rent a car. In London, we don't drive, but in Durham, not many people walk or use public transportation!

But we soon started to enjoy it. Our house was nice, and near a big park. Sacha liked his school, especially his music teacher, who played the trumpet! He worked hard and his teachers were very happy with him.

**b** 11.6 Listen to the rest of the blog. Complete the title in **a** with *the UK* or *the US*.







**c** Listen again and correct the information.

1 Miriam wasn't very happy at work.
2 Dominic worked in an office.
3 Life in the US was very expensive.
4 The children learned to play tennis.
5 The people in Durham weren't very friendly.
6 The national parks were similar to English parks.
7 At the blueberry farm, they listened to classical music.
8 They stayed in Durham for two years.
9 They returned to England because they missed their life there.

**d** Do you know anyone who lived or studied in another country? Where were they? Was it a good experience?

# 11B How was your day?

*Did you have a good day?* *Yes, I had a great day.*

G simple past irregular verbs: *get*, *go*, *have*, *do*

V verb phrases with *get*, *go*, *have*, *do*

P sentence rhythm

## 1 VOCABULARY verb phrases with *get*, *go*, *have*, *do*

**a** Complete the verb phrases.

to bed breakfast a coffee dinner ~~a flight~~ home homework housework lunch a nice day out to school a soda ~~a taxi~~ ~~up early~~ yoga

1 **get** — a flight, a taxi, up early

3 **have**

2 **go**

4 **do**

**b** 11.7 Listen and check.

**c** Test a partner. **A** (book open) say a phrase from the list. **B** (book closed) say the phrase with the correct verb.

*a flight* *get a flight*

## 2 LISTENING

**a** 11.8 Ben was in Washington, DC, for the day on business. He arrived home in New York at 3:10 p.m. Listen to the conversation with his daughter, Linda. Check (✓) the places where she says she was during the day.

- ☐ at home
- ☐ in a museum
- ☐ in a shopping mall
- ☐ in a restaurant
- ☐ in a café
- ☐ at school



**b** Listen again and read the conversation. Complete the missing words.

**B** Hi. I'm back. Linda! What are you doing at [1]**h**_____?
**L** Hi, Dad. You're really early.
**B** Yes, I got an early [2]**fl**_____.
**L** Uh, how was your day?
**B** My day was fine. But what about your day? Why aren't you at school?
**L** We didn't have [3]**cl**_____ today. We went to the [4]**A**_____ Museum of Natural History in the morning. It was great. And then we had [5]**l**_____ in the café there.
**B** Why didn't you go to school this afternoon?
**L** We had a [6]**fr**_____ afternoon. I stayed at home.
**B** What did you do?
**L** I did my [7]**h**_____. I had a lot of work.
**B** Good girl. When are your exams?
**L** They're next [8]**w**_____.
**B** Where's your [9]**m**_____?
**L** She went out. I think she went [10]**sh**_____.
**B** What's that?
**L** What?
**B** That noise.

**c** 11.9 What do you think the noise is? Listen and check.

## 3 GRAMMAR simple past irregular verbs: *get*, *go*, *have*, *do*

**a** Read the conversation in **2** again. Complete the chart.

| simple present | simple past |
|---|---|
| I get | I _____ an early flight. |
| we go | We _____ to the American Museum of Natural History. |
| we have | We _____ lunch in the café. |
| I do | I _____ my homework. |

**b** 11.10 Listen and check. Then repeat the simple past sentences.

**c** **Grammar Bank 11B** *p.112*



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
sentence rhythm

**a** 11.12 Listen and repeat the questions and answers. Copy the rhythm.

**A** **What time** did you **get up**?
**B** I **got up** at **7:30**.
**A** Did you **have breakfast**?
**B** **Yes**, I **did**.
**A** **What** did you **have**?
**B** I **had toast** and **coffee**.
**A** **What** did you **do then**?
**B** I **went** to **work**.

**b** **Communication** Your day *p.81* Interview a partner about yesterday.

## 5 READING

**a** *Life in a Day* is a movie produced by Ridley Scott. Read the introduction to the article. What did a lot of people do on July 24th?

**b** 11.13 Look at the photos with the article. Read and listen to the rest of the article. Complete captions 1–5.

**c** Read the article again. Then answer the questions with a partner.

1 What normal things did people do on July 24th?
2 What unusual things did they do?

**d** Cover the article. Can you remember the past tense of these verbs?

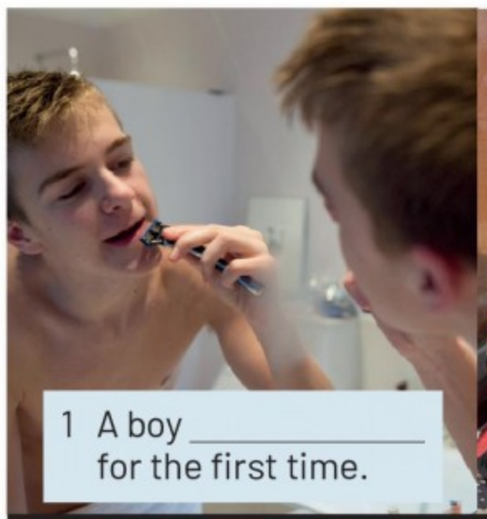
do get up go have open wash work

**e** Complete the sentences with a verb from **d**.

1 The children _____ at 7:45 this morning and they were late for school.
2 I was very happy when I _____ my birthday present. It was exactly what I wanted!
3 I _____ my English homework on the bus yesterday.
4 I _____ very hard today. I'm really tired!
5 Last summer we _____ to France on vacation. We were very lucky – we _____ fantastic weather.
6 **A** Is this a new car?
**B** No, it's two years old, but I _____ it this morning!

## 6 WRITING a blog post

**Writing Bank 5** *p.87* Write about what you did yesterday.


1 A boy _____ for the first time.


2 A small boy _____.


3 A man _____ in _____.


4 A woman _____ a _____.


5 A man and a woman _____ _____.

# LIFE IN A DAY

**We asked people around the world to film their lives. We got 4,500 hours of video from 102 countries. All of it was filmed on the same day – July 24th.**

Early in the morning in the US, a baby opened his eyes and looked at his mother. "Isn't he pretty?" she asked the camera. Around the world, people got up, and washed, and had breakfast. A 15-year-old boy shaved for the first time. He didn't enjoy it! A small boy kissed his mother on her birthday.

July 24th was a Saturday, so a lot of people didn't go to work. They relaxed and went to the park with their family, or went shopping. But other people worked hard, or cooked and cleaned. Some children played – but others worked. One small boy cleaned shoes on the street. One woman went to the hospital for an operation.

Another woman waited all evening for a video call from her husband. He was a soldier thousands of miles from home.

For some people, July 24th was a special day. A man arrived in Kathmandu. He was on a bicycle trip around the world. A woman did an incredible skydive. An unemployed man got his first job. A boy who was in college went home to see his father for the first time in three years. Another man asked his girlfriend to marry him. A man and a woman got married and had an incredible party.

This beautiful movie shows us life around the world in the 21st century. Watch it! It's free on YouTube.

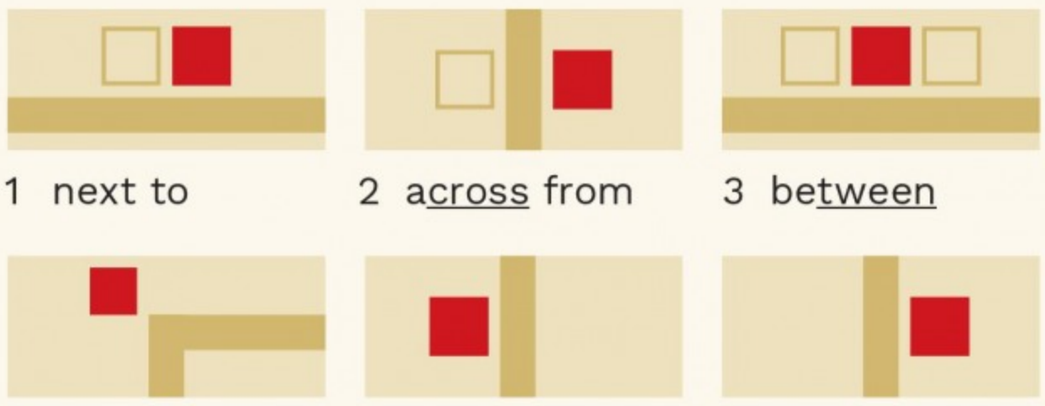
PRACTICAL ENGLISH 6

# Is there a bank near here?

Practical English | asking for and giving directions | V prepositions of place | P sentence rhythm and polite intonation

## 1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
prepositions of place; sentence rhythm and polite intonation

**a** 11.14 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



1 next to 2 across from 3 between

4 on the corner 5 on the left 6 on the right

**b** 11.15 Look at the map and the names of the streets and buildings. Listen and complete the places A–D.

coffee shop | Chinese restaurant | phone store | park

**c** 11.16 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm and polite intonation.

A **Excuse** me. Is there a **bank near here**?
B **Yes**, there's **one** on the **corner** of **King Street** and **East Road**.
A **Thank you**.

**d** Practice in pairs. Choose places on the map.

*Excuse me. Is there a...near here?*

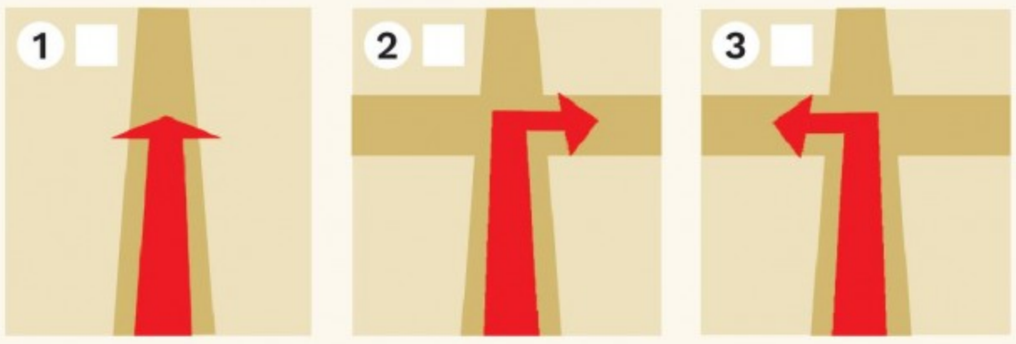
*Yes, there's one on...*



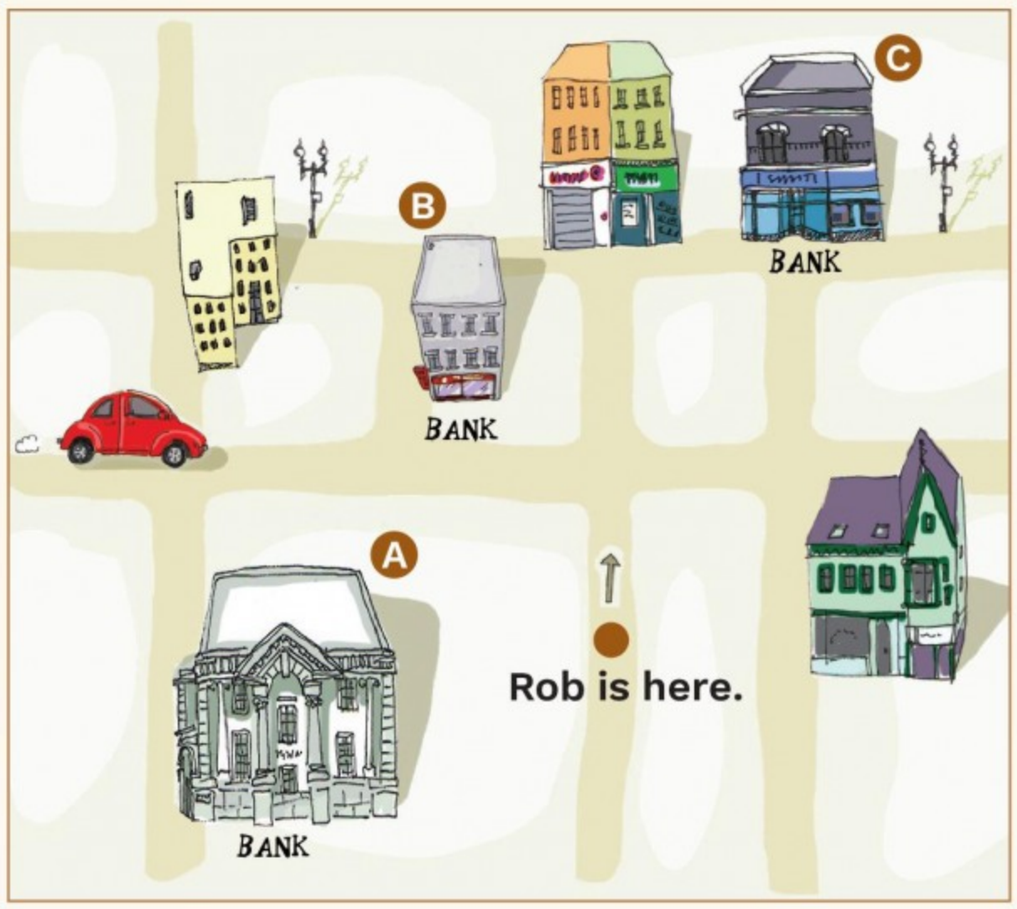
## 2 ASKING FOR AND GIVING DIRECTIONS

**a** 11.17 Match the words and pictures. Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

**A** Turn right. **B** Turn left. **C** Go straight ahead.




**b** Video Watch *Asking for and giving directions* Part 1. Which bank does Rob go to, A, B, or C?




| | |
|---|---|
| **Rob** | Excuse me. Is there a cash machine near here? |
| **Woman** | Yes. There's one at Barclays Bank. |
| **Rob** | Sorry, where is that? |
| **Woman** | Turn left and go straight on. Then turn right and it's on the right. |
| **Rob** | Thanks very much. |
| **Woman** | You're welcome. |

**c** In pairs, practice the conversation in **b**.

**d** Video Watch *Asking for and giving directions* Part 2. Which bank does Rob go to next?

**e** C **Communication** Excuse me. Can you help me?
**A** *p.80* **B** *p.85* Practice asking for directions.

| American English | British English |
|---|---|
| across from | opposite |
| ATM | cash machine |
| straight ahead | straight on |
| turn on London Street | turn into London Street |

## 3 WHERE'S JENNY'S HOTEL?



**a** Video Watch *Where's Jenny's hotel?* Why is Rob calling Jenny?

**b** Watch the video again. Complete the information about Jenny's hotel.

Hotel [1] Indigo, [2] _____ Street. It's near Paddington [3] _____. Get the Heathrow Express train from the [4] _____ to Paddington. It only takes about [5] _____ minutes.

DIRECTIONS: Turn [6] _____ when you leave the station. Then go [7] _____ for a bit and turn [8] _____ London Street. The hotel's [9] _____ Norfolk Square.

**c** What do Rob and Jenny agree to do?

## 4 USEFUL PHRASES

Video Watch and repeat the useful phrases.

Is there a cash machine near here?
Thanks very much.
You're welcome.
I don't believe it!
Excuse me, this cash machine isn't working.
It only takes about 15 minutes.
Turn left when you leave the station.

# 12A Strangers on a train

*Where did he see her?* *He saw her on the train.*

- G simple past: regular and irregular verbs
- V regular and irregular verbs
- P irregular verbs

## 1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
regular and irregular verbs

**a** Take the Verbs quiz with a partner.

arrive exchange look open talk start

### Verbs Quiz

1 Look at the **regular verbs** and answer the questions.

arrive ask close exchange
finish look move open
start stop talk wait

a Which verb doubles the final consonant before the *-ed* ending?
b Which four verbs only add *-d*?
c In which two verbs is the *-ed* ending pronounced /ɪd/?

2 Match the simple past of the **irregular verbs** to the verbs.

wrote bought sent sat
left said told saw

buy _____
leave _____
say _____
see _____
send _____
sit _____
tell _____
write _____

said sat bought told

**b** 12.1 Listen and repeat the verbs in the quiz in the past tense.

**c** 12.2 Cover the quiz. Listen and say the verb in the past tense.

1 *say* *said*
2 *tell* *told*

## 2 READING & LISTENING

12.3–12.4 Read and listen to the story. In pairs, ask and answer the questions after each part.



# Strangers on a train

**12.3 Part 1**

When the train stopped at the station, I opened my eyes and looked out of the window. I saw a woman on the platform. She was tall and blond with blue eyes. The train moved and I closed my eyes. It was 4:00 p.m. and the train was full.

"Excuse me. Can I sit here?" I opened my eyes again. It was the tall, blond woman.

"Sure," I answered. She sat down next to me. There was a nice smell. Chanel No. 5. I started to listen to music on my phone.

"I love Chopin."

"Sorry?" I said.

"You're listening to Chopin. I love classical music." She smiled. Her eyes were very blue.

We talked about music until the train arrived at Paddington Station. "Would you like a cup of coffee?" she asked me. I looked at my watch. "OK," I said. "I have time."

1 Where did the man first see the woman?
2 What was the woman's perfume?
3 What did they talk about?
4 What did the woman invite him to do when the train arrived?



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE



**12.4** Part 2

We bought two coffees at the station café. We sat down.

"My name's Olivia,"' she said.

"I'm David. I'm from Chicago. Nice to meet you. What do you do?" I asked.

"I work in property – flats and houses. What do you do?"

"I work for Citibank."

"That's interesting!" said Olivia. "Do you live in London?"

"Yes, but I'm new here. I moved to London last month. I have a flat in Chelsea."

"Wow! That's an expensive part of London!"

I looked at my watch. "Time to go. I have a tennis lesson this evening."

"I can drive you home," she said. "I live near Chelsea." I told her my address.

5 What's Olivia's job?
6 What's David's job?
7 Where do they live?
8 Why did David give Olivia his address?

**Glossary**
**flat** (British English) an apartment

## 3 GRAMMAR
simple past: regular and irregular verbs

**a** Read the conversations and circle the correct form.

1 **A** Where did you *go* / *went* on Saturday?
**B** I *go* / *went* shopping for clothes.
**A** What did you *buy* / *bought*?
**B** I *buy* / *bought* a new jacket.
**A** *Did* / *Was* it expensive?
**B** No, it *didn't* / *wasn't*.

2 **A** What *did you do* / *did you* last night?
**B** I *was* / *went* to the movies. I *see* / *saw* a new French movie.
**A** *Did* / *Was* you *like* / *liked* it?
**B** No, I *didn't like* / *didn't liked* it very much. It *was* / *were* very slow.

**b** **12.5** Listen and check.

**c** **Grammar Bank 12A** *p.114*

**d** With a partner, retell Parts 1 and 2 of the story. Use the questions to help you.

- How did David meet Olivia?
- What did they talk about?
- What happened at Paddington Station?
- How did David get home from the station?

## 4 LISTENING



**a** Video Watch *Strangers on a train* Part 3. Answer the questions.

1 What kind of car did Olivia have?
2 What did she have two tickets for?
3 Where did she want to meet him? What time?





**b** Video Watch Part 4. Answer the questions.

1 What time did David arrive at the concert hall?
2 What happened at 7:45? What did David do?
3 What did David do when the concert finished?
4 What did he do after that?
5 Why do you think Olivia didn't come to the concert?
6 What do you think David saw when he opened the door?

**c** Video Watch Part 5, the end of the story. Do you think it was a good ending?

# 12B

# Review the past

G simple past review
V review of past verb forms
P review of vowel sounds

*What did you do last Saturday?* *I went to the movies.*

Play the game in groups of three or four.

**RULES**
Throw a die. When you land on a square, answer the question.
**Green** and **pink** squares are "group" questions. Answer them together.
You can't make the same sentence that another player made before.
The first person who answers question 30 is the winner.

**1**

Say five things you did yesterday morning.

**2**

What did you do on your last summer vacation?




**3**

Ask your group three questions with *Where were you yesterday at...?*

**4**

*be*, *have*, or *do*? Which verb do we use with each expression?

_____ a good day
_____ tired
_____ yoga
_____ hungry
_____ homework
_____ lunch

Make three + or − sentences about yesterday with three different phrases.

**5**

In which verb(s) is the *-ed* ending pronounced /ɪd/?

hated liked loved wanted

Make two sentences about when you were a child with two different verbs.

**6**

What did you have for breakfast this morning? Where did you have it?

**7**

What's the last big city you visited?

**8**

When was the last time you bought a souvenir? What was it?

**9**

Complete the verb in each phrase.

d_____ housework
g_____ up in the morning
h_____ a nice evening
w_____ for a bus

Make an + or − sentence about yesterday with each verb.

**10**

In which verb(s) is the *-ed* ending pronounced /ɪd/?

decided needed
opened watched

Make two sentences about last night with two different verbs.

**11**

What did you do last Saturday?

**12**

Did you go shopping last week? Where? What did you buy?

**13**

What was the last movie you saw? When and where did you see it? Did you like it?



**14**

Which verb is irregular? What's its past form?

book go pack stay

Make two + or − sentences about your last vacation with two different verbs.

## 15

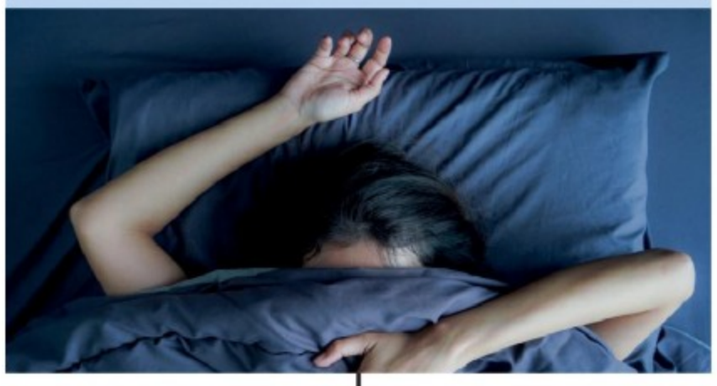
Which verb has a different vowel sound?

p**ai**nted r**ai**ned s**ai**d w**ai**ted

Make a sentence with each verb.

## 16

What time did you get up this morning? Were you tired?



## 17

When is your birthday? What did you do on your last birthday?

## 18

When was the last time you talked to a stranger? What did you talk about?



## 19

Complete the verb in each phrase. What's the past tense of each verb?

b_____ new clothes

s_____ "sorry" to somebody

s_____ a movie

When was the last time you did each thing?

## 20

Match a verb from 1 to one with the same vowel sound in 2.

1 ch**a**nged rel**a**xed st**ar**ted

2 p**ar**ked pl**ay**ed tr**a**veled

Choose one pair of verbs. Make two sentences.

## 21

Did you get a bus or a train last week? Where to?



## 22

How many hours of TV did you watch yesterday? What shows?

## 23

How did you come to class today? Were you late?

## 24

Which verb <u>can't</u> you use with the **bold** noun?

| | |
|---|---|
| cook / drink / have | **dinner** |
| eat / have / want | **a coffee** |
| buy / travel / want | **new shoes** |

Make ⊞ or ⊟ sentences about last week with three of the phrases.

## 25

Which verb has a different vowel sound?

d**i**d l**i**ked l**i**stened l**i**ved

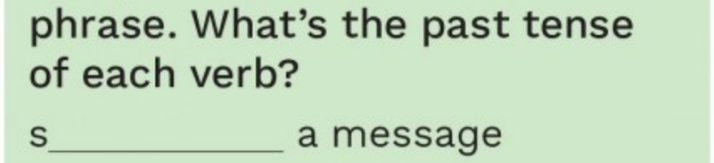
Make a sentence with each verb.

## 26

Where did you have lunch last Sunday? Who with?

## 27

Did you play any sports or exercise last week? What did you do?



## 28

Choose a day last week. Ask your group three questions with *On _____day, did you...?*

## 29

Complete the verb in each phrase. What's the past tense of each verb?

s_____ a message

u_____ a laptop

wr_____ an email

When was the last time you did each thing?

## 30

Which verb has a different vowel sound?

b**ough**t s**a**w t**a**lked w**or**ked

Make two sentences about last Friday with two different verbs.



# 11&12 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

___'s your name?
a Who b What

1 They ___ English at school.
a studyed b studied

2 ___ the movie?
a Did you like b Liked you

3 He ___ late yesterday.
a doesn't work b didn't work

4 What time ___?
a did they arrive b did they arrived

5 I ___ to Vietnam last year.
a was b went

6 I ___ the homework last night.
a didn't do b didn't

7 What time did you ___ this morning?
a get up b got up

8 We ___ lunch at a great restaurant on Sunday.
a haved b had

9 Where ___ on vacation?
a did you go b you did go

10 **A** ___ the movie good?
**B** Yes, fantastic.
a Did b Was

11 I liked the jacket, but I ___ it.
a didn't buy b didn't bought

12 **A** What time ___ to bed last night?
**B** At 10:15.
a did you went b did you go

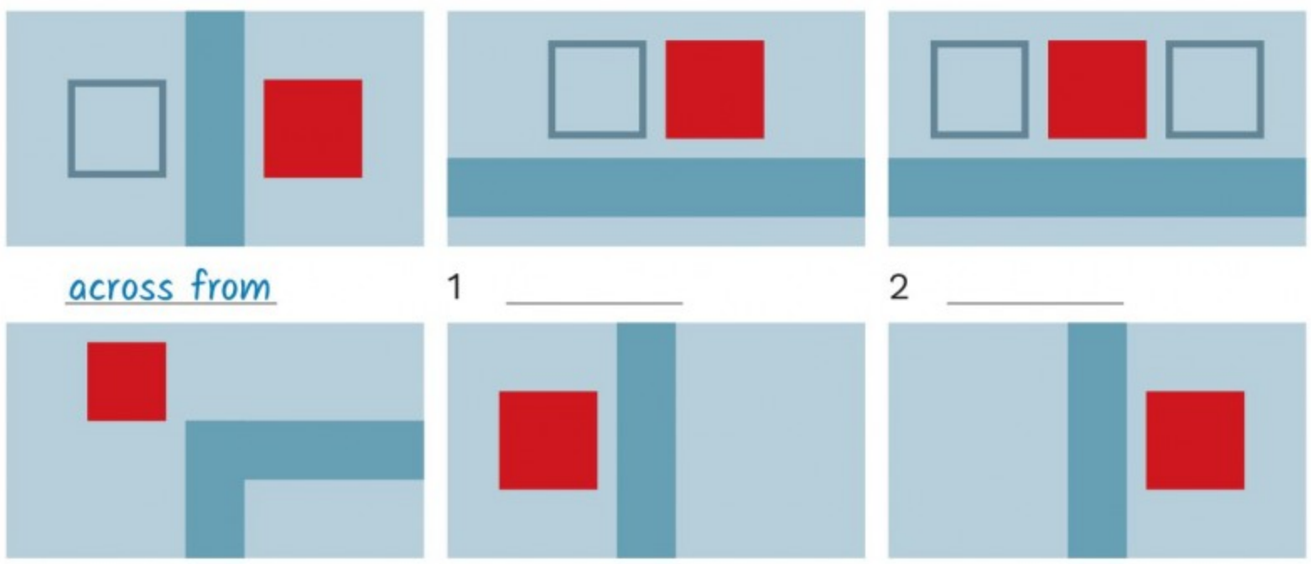
13 Alicia ___ to Mexico City last month.
a goes b went

14 Cho ___ to class yesterday.
a didn't come b didn't came

15 What time ___?
a finished the concert
b did the concert finish

## VOCABULARY

**a** Write the words or phrases.



across from

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____ the _____

4 _____ the _____

5 _____ the _____

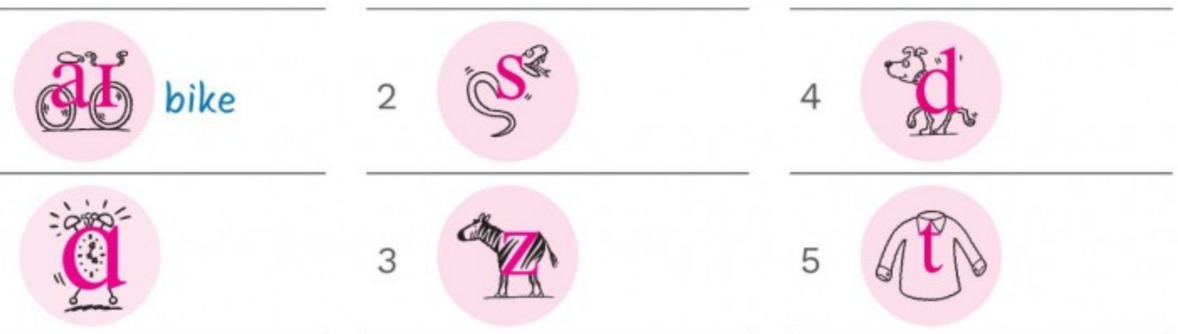
**b** Write the past tense of the verbs (regular or irregular).

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ask | asked | help | _____ | sit | _____ |
| buy | _____ | leave | _____ | start | _____ |
| carry | _____ | miss | _____ | stay | _____ |
| change | _____ | need | _____ | study | _____ |
| cry | _____ | open | _____ | talk | _____ |
| do | _____ | say | _____ | tell | _____ |
| have | _____ | send | _____ | write | _____ |

**c** **12.9 Words and phrases to learn** Files 11&12 *p.132* Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

## PRONUNCIATION

**a** Write the words for the sound pictures.



bike

1

2

3

4

5

**b** **Sound Bank** *p.134–5* Look at more words with the sounds in **a**, and these sounds:



Practice saying the example words.

**c** Underline the stressed syllable.

wea|ther

1 ye|ster|day
2 be|tween
3 de|cide
4 u|ni|ver|si|ty
5 fi|nish

## Can you understand this text?

**a** Read the article about an American student who studied in Jordan. Which three places in Jordan does she mention?

**b** Read again and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 She spent three weeks in Jordan.
2 Her life there was different from her life at home.
3 She didn't learn any Arabic.
4 She has a lot of good memories of Jordan.
5 She stayed in Amman the whole time.
6 She didn't like the countryside.
7 The Jordanians weren't always very friendly.
8 She thinks it's good to study in a different country.

## Can you understand these people?




Sophie Gina Rozie Chimi Susan

**Video** Watch and answer the questions.

1 Last weekend, Sophie ___.
   a stayed at home
   b ate out with friends
   c went to the gym
2 For her last vacation, Gina went to California with ___.
   a her friends
   b her sisters
   c her parents
3 Rozie had a good meal at a ___ on the weekend.
   a French restaurant
   b Mexican restaurant
   c Chinese restaurant
4 Chimi isn't very good at ___ directions.
   a understanding
   b giving
   c understanding or giving
5 Susan says there's a café ___.
   a on the right
   b on the left
   c on the corner

## Can you say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

| Can you...? | Yes, I can. |
|---|---|
| 1 say what you did yesterday, last weekend, etc. | ☐ |
| 2 ask for and give directions in a town | ☐ |
| 3 ask questions about the past | ☐ |

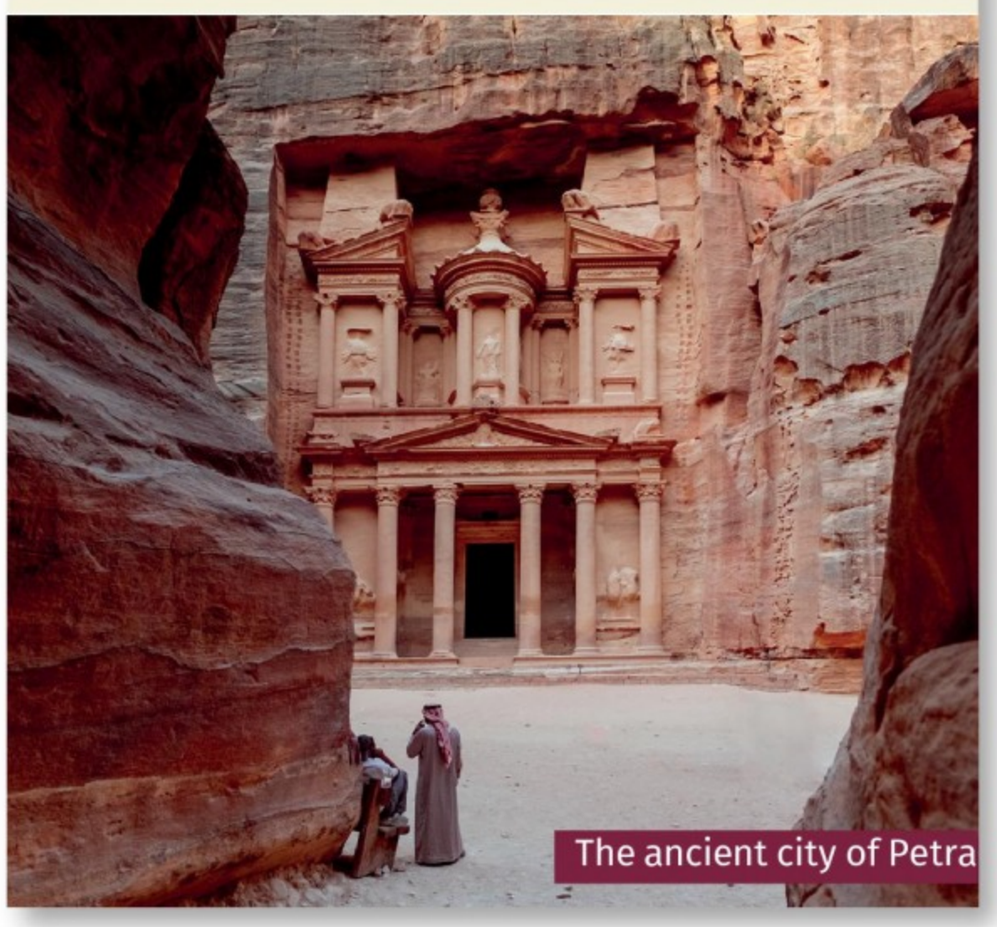
# A UNIQUE CULTURE



I studied for three months at Al-Ahliyya Amman University, in Amman, the capital of Jordan. It was a life-changing experience. Every day was a new adventure – very different from my life in the US. While I was there, I studied US politics in the Middle East, the history of the Arab world, and Arabic language.

People often ask me what my favorite memory is, but it's difficult to answer because there are so many! I loved riding a camel in the Wadi Rum desert and I went on an amazing excursion to Petra. The countryside was beautiful and completely different from where I live in the United States. I also enjoyed the unique culture of Jordan. Of course, there were things that I sometimes found difficult, but everybody from Jordan was very understanding and friendly.

My recommendation for people who want to study abroad is to go to a country that is completely different from where you live and to stay as long as you can. I loved learning about another culture and I think studying abroad is a great experience.



The ancient city of Petra

# Communication

## 1B Where is it? Student A

**a** Ask **B** questions for your cities.

*Where's Lyon?*

1 **Lyon** is in France.
2 **Atlanta** is in the United States.
3 **Hanoi** is in Vietnam.
4 **Curitiba** is in Brazil.
5 **Cusco** is in Peru.
6 **Busan** is in South Korea.
7 **Shanghai** is in China.
8 **Luxor** is in Egypt.

**b** Answer **B**'s questions with a country.

*It's in...* *I think it's in...* *I don't know.*

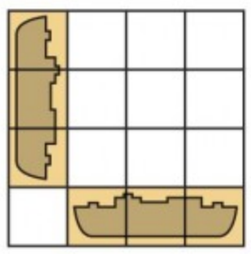
p.8

## PE1 Hit the ships Student A

**a** Draw five "ships" in **Your ships**.

**Your ships**

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | | | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | | | | | | | | |
| G | | | | | | | | | | |
| H | | | | | | | | | | |
| I | | | | | | | | | | |
| J | | | | | | | | | | |



One ship = three squares

**B's ships**

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | | | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | | | | | | | | |
| G | | | | | | | | | | |
| H | | | | | | | | | | |
| I | | | | | | | | | | |
| J | | | | | | | | | | |

**b** Try to "hit" **B**'s ships. Say a square, e.g., *H8*. If **B** says *Hit*, put a ✓ in the square in **B**'s ships. If **B** says *Nothing*, put an ✗ in the square.

*H8?* *Nothing.* *B7?* *Hit!*

**c** **B** says a square. Say *Hit* or *Nothing*.

p.10

## 2A Is sushi Chinese? Student A

**a** Ask **B** about 1–5. Use *Is...?* or *Are...?* Check (✓) if the answer is yes. If the answer is no, write the nationality.

*Is sushi Chinese?*



_____ sushi Chinese?



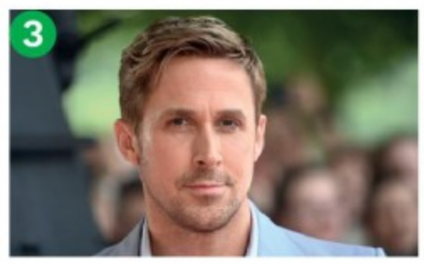
Gisele Bündchen is Brazilian.



_____ Coldplay American?



Kia cars are Korean.



_____ Ryan Gosling French?



Tacos are Mexican.



_____ Victoria Beckham Canadian?



Carlos Alcaraz is Spanish.



_____ the pyramids Egyptian?




Coke is American.

**b** Answer **B**'s question about 6–10.

*Yes, he / she / it is.*

*No, he / she / it isn't. He / She / It's...*

*Yes, they are.*

*No, they aren't. They're...*

p.13

## 2B Personal information Student A

**a** Interview **B** and complete **B**'s form.

*What's your first name?* — *Chris.*

*How do you spell it?* — *C-H-R-I-S.*

### Student B

**First name** _____

**Last name** _____

**Nationality** _____

**Address** _____

**Zip code** _____

**Age** _____

**Married** ☐ **Single** ☐

**Phone number** *Home* _____

*Cell* _____

**Email address** _____

**b** Answer **B**'s questions. Use the information in the **YOU** form.

### YOU

**First name** *Alex*

**Last name** *Barrett*

**Nationality** *American*

**Address** *15 Hill Drive, Los Angeles, CA*

**Zip code** *90041*

**Age** *25*

**Married** ☐ **Single** ✓

**Phone number** *Home* *323-555-0679*

*Cell* *323-555-4198*

**Email address** *abarrett65@oup.com*

p.15

## 3B How much are these watches? Student A

**a** Look at your picture. You are a customer. Ask **B** about the missing prices. Use *this / that* for singular objects **OR** *these / those* for plural objects. Write the prices.

*How much are those umbrellas?* — *They're...*




**b** Now **B** is a customer. Answer **B**'s questions with a price.

*It's / They're...dollars.*

p.21

## PE3 What time is it? Student A

**a** Ask **B** a question to complete the time on clock 1.

*Clock 1: What time is it?*




**b** Answer **B**'s question about clock 2.

*It's...*

**c** Continue with the other clocks.

p.34

## 8A I'm a tourist. Where can I...? Student A

**a** You are a tourist. **B** lives in this town. Ask **B** your questions.



### In this town

**Where can I...?**

- have a good, cheap meal
- see movies in English
- go with small children
- go in the evening

**Can I...?**

- go shopping in the evening
- drive around downtown



**b** You live in this town. Answer **B**'s questions about your town, or a town you know well.

p.49

## 9A The same or different? Student A

**a** Say what the woman in picture 1 is doing. **B** says if his / her picture is the same or different. Write ***S*** or ***D***.

*In my picture 1, a woman is reading a book.*




**b** Now listen to **B** describe the person in picture 2. Is your person the same or different? Tell **B**. Write ***S*** or ***D***.

**c** Continue with people 3–8.

**d** Compare your pictures and check your answers.

p.55

## PE6 Excuse me. Can you help me? Student A

**a** Ask **B** for directions to the bus station. Then mark it on the map (building 1, 2, or 3). You begin:

*Excuse me. Can you help me?*
*Where's the bus station, please?*

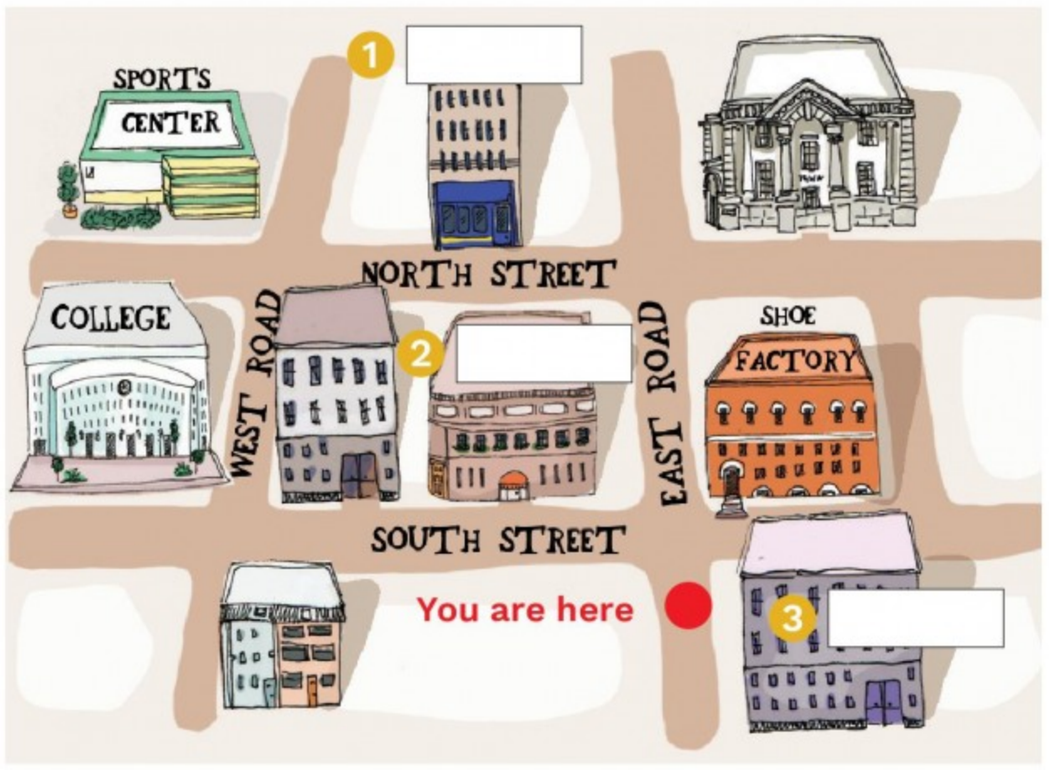
**b** Help **B** when he / she asks you for directions to the college.

*Excuse me. ...* *Go...*

**c** Now ask **B** for directions to the Park Hotel and the phone store. Then mark them on the map.

**d** Give **B** directions to the sports center and the shoe factory.

p.71



## 10A Is there a TV? Where is it?
Student A

**a** Look at picture 1. Ask **B** questions about the things in the list.

books coat sodas keys lamp laptop newspaper suitcase towels TV

*Are there any books?* *Is there a coat?*

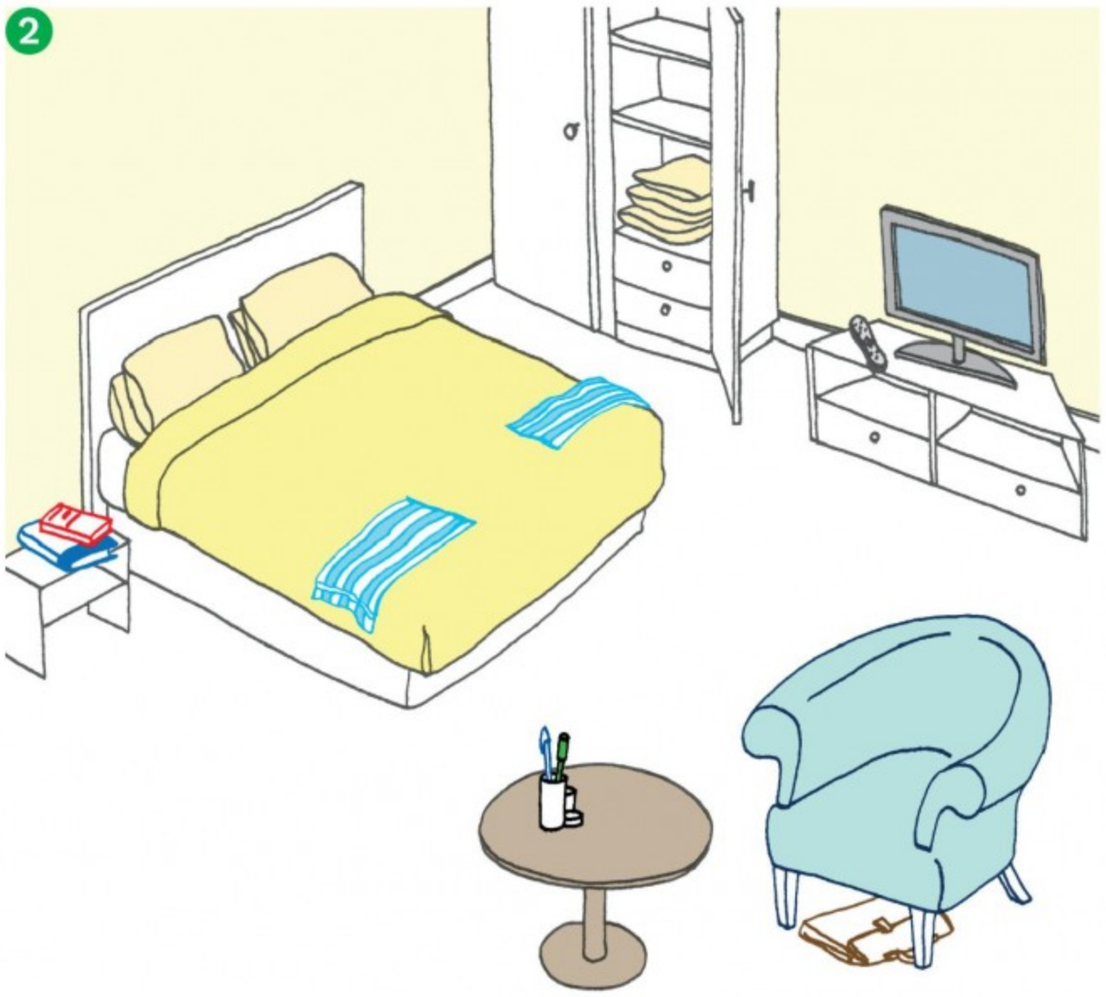
If **B** answers *Yes*, ask *Where are they?* **OR** *Where is it?* Draw the thing(s) in the correct places in picture 1.

1



**b** Look at picture 2 and answer **B**'s questions.

2



p.61

## 11B Your day Students A+B

**a** What did you do yesterday? Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Write your partner's answers.

*What time did you get up yesterday?*

*I got up at 6:30 in the morning.*

| Your day | Your partner |
|---|---|
| 1 What time / get up yesterday? | |
| 2 / take a shower? | |
| 3 / have breakfast? What / have? | |
| 4 / go to work or school? How / get there? | |
| 5 What time / start work or school? | |
| 6 Where / have lunch? / enjoy it? | |
| 7 What time / go home? | |
| 8 / do homework or housework? | |
| 9 What / have for dinner? | |
| 10 / watch TV? What / watch? | |
| 11 What time / go to bed? | |
| 12 / have a good day? | |

**b** Change partners. Tell your new partner three things about your first partner.

p.69

## 1B Where is it? Student B

**a** Answer **A**'s questions with a country.

*It's in...* *I think it's in...* *I don't know.*

**b** Ask **A** questions for your cities.

*Where's Acapulco?*

1 **Acapulco** is in Mexico.
2 **Montreal** is in Canada.
3 **Manchester** is in England.
4 **Salta** is in Argentina.
5 **Osaka** is in Japan.
6 **Santiago** is in Chile.
7 **Chiang Mai** is in Thailand.
8 **Valencia** is in Spain.

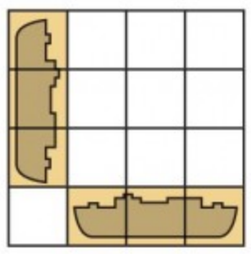
p.8

## PE1 Hit the ships Student B

**a** Draw five "ships" in **Your ships**.

**Your ships**

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | | | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | | | | | | | | |
| G | | | | | | | | | | |
| H | | | | | | | | | | |
| I | | | | | | | | | | |
| J | | | | | | | | | | |



One ship = three squares

**A's ships**

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | | | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | | | | | | | | |
| G | | | | | | | | | | |
| H | | | | | | | | | | |
| I | | | | | | | | | | |
| J | | | | | | | | | | |

**b** **A** says a square, e.g., *H8*. If you have a ship in H8, say *Hit*. If not, say *Nothing*.

*H8?* *Nothing.* *B7?* *Hit!*

**c** Try to "hit" **A**'s ships. Say a square, e.g., *B3*. If **A** says *Hit*, put a ✓ in the square in **A**'s ships. If **A** says *Nothing*, put an ✗ in the square.

p.10

## 2A Is sushi Chinese? Student B

**a** Answer **A**'s question about 1–5.

*Yes, he / she / it is.*

*No, he / she / it isn't. He / She / It's...*

*Yes, they are.*

*No, they aren't. They're...*




Sushi is Japanese.




_____ Gisele Bündchen Chilean?




Coldplay is British.




_____ Kia cars Vietnamese?




Ryan Gosling is Canadian.




_____ tacos Mexican?




Victoria Beckham is British.




_____ Carlos Alcaraz Argentinian?




The pyramids are Egyptian.




_____ Coke British?

**b** Ask **A** about 6–10. Use *Is...?* or *Are...?* Check (✓) if the answer is yes. If the answer is no, write the nationality.

*Is Gisele Bündchen Chilean?*

p.13

## 2B Personal information Student B

**a** Answer **A**'s questions. Use the information in the **YOU** form.

### YOU

| | |
|---|---|
| **First name** | Chris |
| **Last name** | Lennox |
| **Nationality** | American |
| **Address** | 81 West Street, Bridgeport, CT |
| **Zip code** | 06605 |
| **Age** | 31 |
| **Married** ✓ **Single** | |
| **Phone number** | Home 203-555-8164 |
| | Cell 203-555-0997 |
| **Email address** | chris71@geemail.com |

**b** Interview **A** and complete **A**'s form.

*What's your first name?* — *Alex.*

*How do you spell it?* — *A-L-E-X.*

### Student A

| | |
|---|---|
| **First name** | |
| **Last name** | |
| **Nationality** | |
| **Address** | |
| **Zip code** | |
| **Age** | |
| **Married** **Single** | |
| **Phone number** | *Home* |
| | *Cell* |
| **Email address** | |

p.15

## 3B How much are these watches? Student B

**a** Look at your picture. **A** is a customer. Answer **A**'s questions with a price.

*It's / They're...dollars.*




**b** Now you are a customer. Ask **A** about the missing prices. Use *this / these* **OR** *that / those*. Write the prices.

*How much are those caps?* — *They're...*

p.21

## PE3 What time is it? Student B

**a** Answer **A**'s question about clock 1.

*It's...*




**b** Ask **A** a question to complete the time on clock 2.

*Clock 2: What time is it?*

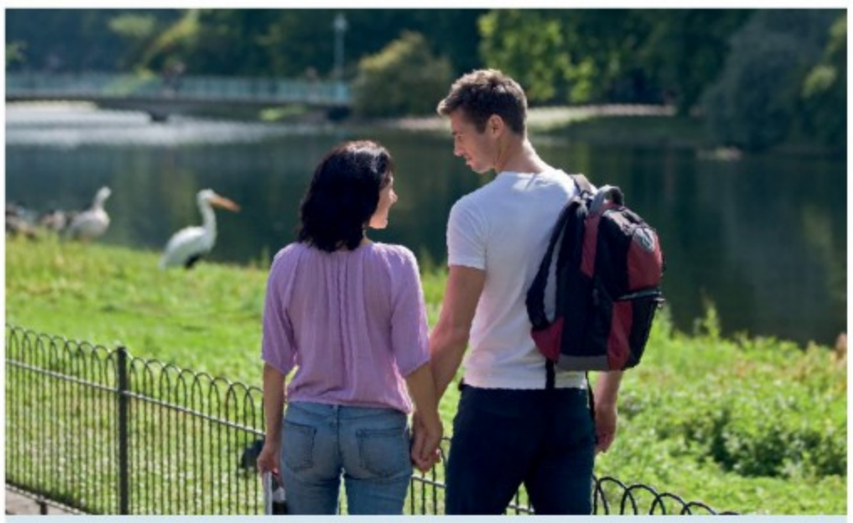
**c** Continue with the other clocks.

p.34

## 8A I'm a tourist. Where can I...? Student B

**a** You live in this town. Answer **A**'s questions about your town, or a town you know well.

**b** You are a tourist. **A** lives in this town. Ask **A** your questions.



### In this town

**Where can I...?**

- go for a nice walk
- go shopping for souvenirs
- park in a parking lot
- eat really good food

**Can I...?**

- go shopping on Sundays
- pay by card in cafés and small stores




p.49

## 9A The same or different? Student B

**a** Listen to **A** describe what the woman in picture 1 is doing. Is your person the same or different? Write ***S*** or ***D***.




**b** Describe the person in picture 2 to **A**. Say what he / she is doing. **A** says if his / her picture is the same or different. Tell **A**. Write ***S*** or ***D***.

*In my picture 2, a man is carrying a suitcase. He's on the street.*

**c** Continue with people 3–8.

**d** Compare your pictures and check your answers.

p.55

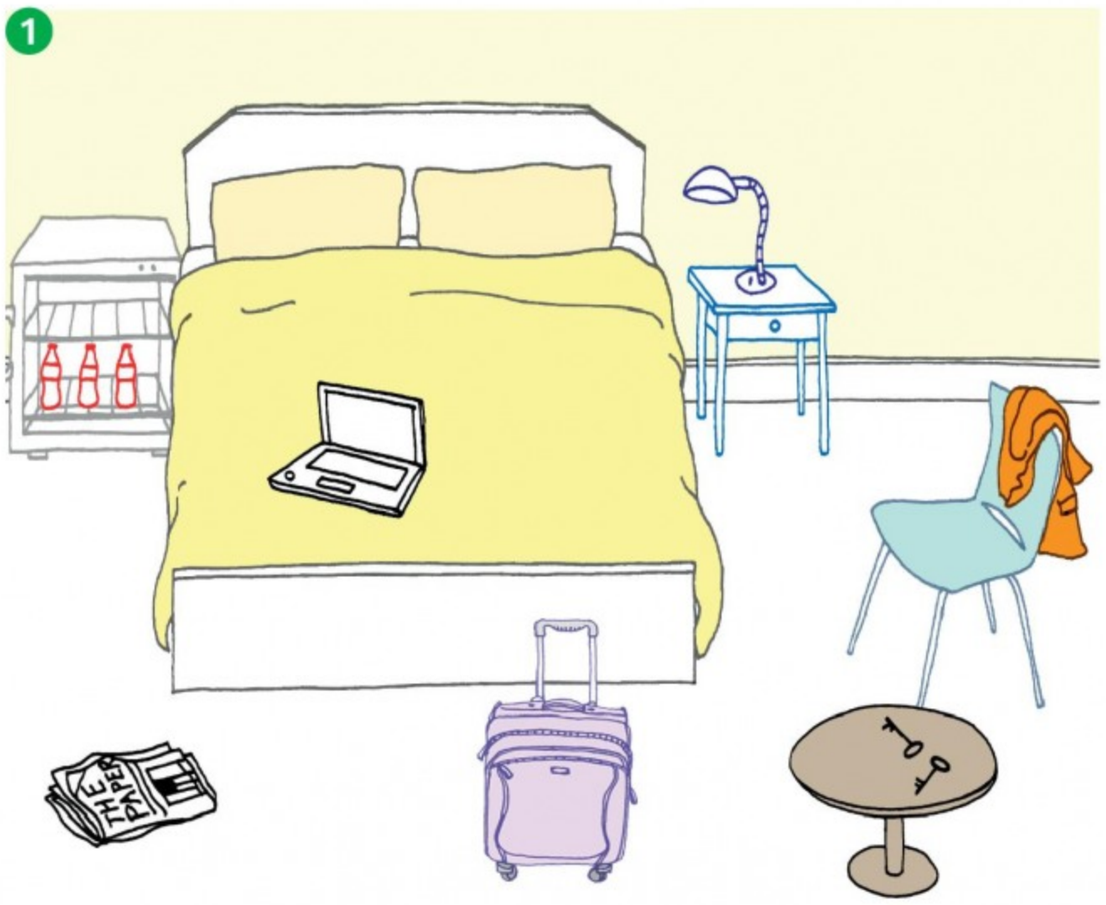


MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

## 10A Is there a TV? Where is it?

Student B

**a** Look at picture 1 and answer **A**'s questions.




**b** Look at picture 2. Ask **A** questions about the things in the list.

bag books clock sodas extra pillows laptop pens remote control towels TV

*Is there a bag?* *Are there any books?*

If **A** answers *Yes*, ask *Where is it?* **OR** *Where are they?* Draw the thing(s) in the correct places in picture 2.



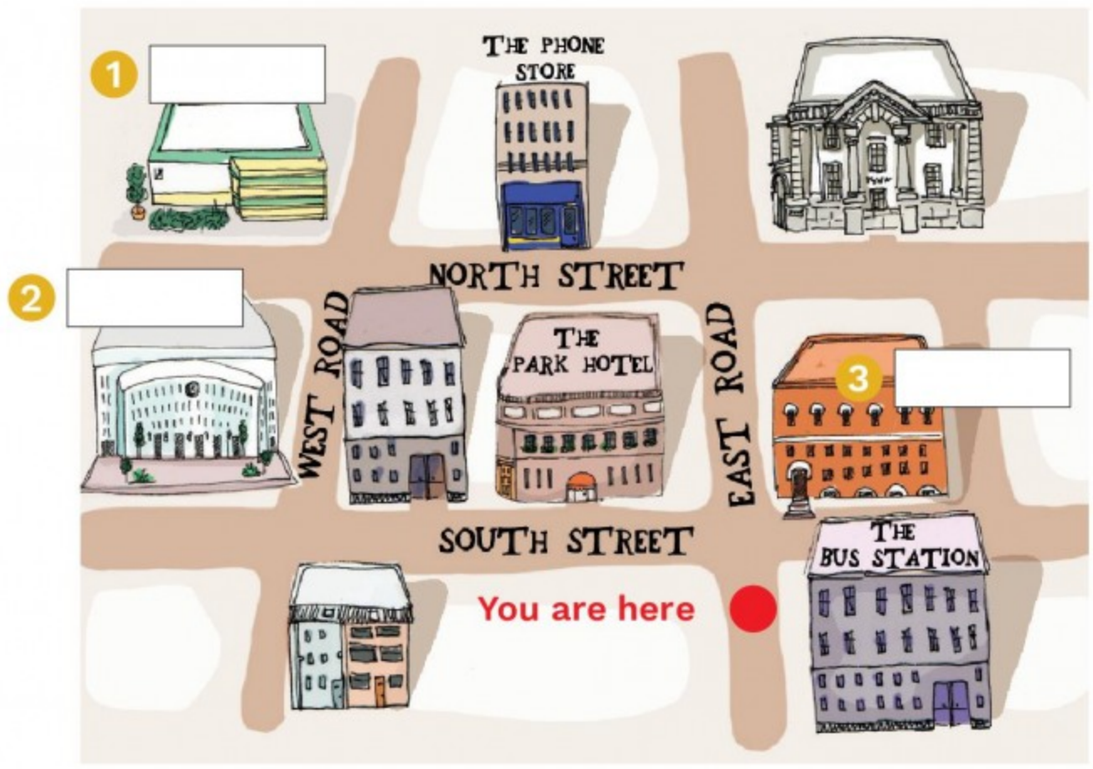

p.61

## PE6 Excuse me. Can you help me?

Student B

**a** Help **A** when he / she asks you for directions to the bus station.

*Excuse me. ...* *Go...*




**b** Ask **A** for directions to the college. Then mark it on the map (building 1, 2, or 3). You begin:

*Excuse me. Can you help me?*
*Where's the college, please?*

**c** Help **A** when he / she asks you for directions to the Park Hotel and the phone store.

**d** Ask **A** for directions to the sports center and the shoe factory. Then mark them on the map.

p.71

# Writing Bank

## 1 A form

**a** Look at the form. Match each part to a question a–h below.

a ▬ Are you married?
b ▬ What's your home phone number?
c ▬ What's your zip code?
d ▬ How old are you?
e ▬ What's your email?
f | What's your name?
g ▬ What's your cell phone number?
h ▬ What's your address?

**CREDIT CARD Application form**

1 First name
Last name
Title ☐ Mr. ☐ Ms. ☐ Mrs.
2 Age
3 Married ☐ Single ☐
Divorced / Separated ☐
4 Address
5 Zip code
6 Email
Phone number
7 home
8 cell

**b** Read the information box. Complete the form for you. Check (✓) your title, too.

**Titles**

Mr. = a man, Ms. = a woman,
Mrs. = a married woman

**Capital letters**

Adam Davis **NOT** ~~adam davis~~
245 Green Street **NOT** ~~245 green street~~
Miami, Florida **NOT** ~~miami, florida~~

p.15

## 2 A post about a photo




**a** Read about Ava and her family. What are their names? Write the numbers on the photo.

My name is Ava and I'm from Dallas, Texas, in the US. This is a photo of my family. My father's name is [1]Ron, and my mother's name is [2]Linda. I have a sister, [3]Ariana, and a brother, [4]Will. We have a dog. His name is [5]Rocky. Do you like my photo?

**b** Look at the highlighted punctuation in the text and read the information box.

**Punctuation**

| | |
|---|---|
| period (.) | *My name is Ava and I'm from Dallas.* **NOT** ~~*My name is Ava and I'm from Dallas*~~ |
| comma (,) | *I have a sister, Ariana, and a brother, Will.* |
| question mark (?) | *Do you like my photo?* |
| apostrophe (') | *I'm from Dallas.* **NOT** ~~*Im from Dallas.*~~ *My father's name...* **NOT** ~~*My fathers name...*~~ |

**c** Post a photo of your family and write about it. p.25

## 3 A comment post

**a** Read Marcos's comment. Do you like his breakfast?

**LET'S CHAT!**

TODAY'S QUESTION: Is breakfast important for you? What do you have? Where do you have it?

**Marcos**, Cuenca, Spain *7 mins ago*

Breakfast is very important for me! I have fruit, usually an orange or an apple.

Then I have bread with butter and jam and a cup of coffee.

I usually have breakfast at home, but on the weekend I have it at a café near my house. I think my breakfast is very healthy.



**b** Look at the highlighted words. Complete sentences 1–3 with *and*, *or*, or *but*.

1 I eat fish, _____ I don't eat meat.
2 Do you have tea _____ coffee for breakfast?
3 I have a brother _____ a sister.

**c** Write a comment about your breakfast. What do you have? Is it healthy? Use *and*, *but*, and *or* to connect. p.31

## 4 An email

**a** Read the email from Lucy. What does she invite Kate to?

Subject: Dinner x Inbox

**From: Lucy Lewis** <LL1991.zyx@oup.com>
To: Kate <ksavage@geeemail.net>

Hi Kate,

Would you like to come to dinner on Thursday? I'm inviting Nora and Kenji, too.

Can you come at 7:00? After dinner, we can watch the game on TV!

See you on Thursday. (I hope!)

Lucy

**b** Now read Kate's answer. Circle the correct phrase.

Subject: Re: Dinner x Inbox

**From: Kate** <ksavage@geeemail.net>
To: Lucy Lewis <LL1991.zyx@oup.com>

Dear Lucy,

*I'd love to come / I'm sorry, but I can't come* on Thursday. I have an exam on Friday morning and I need to study on Thursday night.

*See you on Thursday. / Maybe see you on the weekend?*

Love,

Kate

**c** Read the information box about emails.

**Emails**

| | |
|---|---|
| Greetings | *Hi* + name, *Dear* + name, |
| Closings | *Best wishes*, *Love*, (only family and good friends)<br>*See you* (*on Thursday*, *soon*, etc.) |

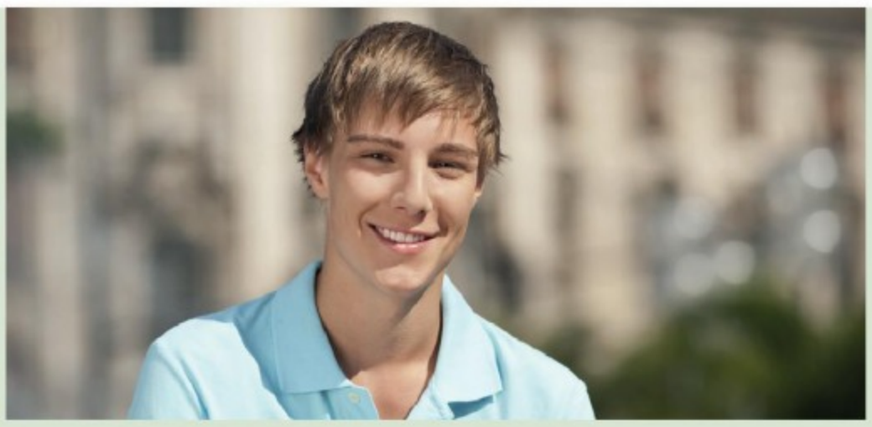
**d** Work in pairs. Write an email to your partner on a piece of paper or on your phone. Invite him / her to do something, e.g., have dinner, come to a party, see a movie, etc. Remember to say when and what time.

**e** Now exchange emails with your partner. Answer your partner's invitation.

**f** Give or send the email to your partner. Read your partner's answer to your email. p.59

## 5 A blog post

**a** Read Eddie's blog. Number the sentences in the correct order 1–7.



# A big day

by Eddie • *17 hours ago*

Yesterday was a big day for me. It was the first day of my new job.

☐ After that, I went to my new office. I got a taxi because I didn't want to be late.

☐ I went to bed early, at 9:30. I was really tired, but it was a good day!

1 I got up at 6:30. I usually get up at 8:00 or 8:30, but yesterday I was very excited!

☐ I didn't go out for lunch – I had a sandwich in the office. My colleagues usually do that, so I did, too.

☐ I went home at 5:30. I had a pizza for dinner with my girlfriend. After dinner, we watched TV.

☐ Then I had breakfast. I didn't eat very much because I was a little nervous.

☐ When I arrived, the boss introduced me to the other people in the office. Everybody was very friendly.

**b** What did you do yesterday? Write a blog post about your day. Use *then*, *after that*, and *after breakfast / lunch*, etc., to put the events in order. p.69

# Listening

### 1.5

**Maria** A cappuccino, please.
**Andrew** A tea for me.
**Sally** And a tea for me, too.
**Barista** What's your name?
**Maria** Maria.
**Andrew** I'm Andrew.
**Sally** I'm Sally.
**Barista** Two teas and one cappuccino.

### 2.25

1 **A** Great. OK, see you on Tuesday.
**B** Yes. Oh, what's your phone number?
**A** It's, uh, 386-555-0142.
2 **A** Thank you. What's your address, please?
**B** It's 67 Oak Street. It's near here.
3 **A** Come in, sit down. You're Martin Lee, right?
**B** Yes.
**A** And how old are you, Mr. Lee?
**B** I'm 39.
4 **A** Thank you very much. Uh, one more thing. What's your email?
**B** It's james85@geemail.com.

### 3.2

What are the top things people look for every day?
At number 8, it's...wallets and change purses.
At number 7, umbrellas.
At number 6, bank cards – credit cards or debit cards.
At number 5, phone chargers.
And now for the top four.
At number 4, glasses and sunglasses.
At number 3, pens and pencils.
And at number 2, cell phones.
And at number 1 – yes, that's right – keys. House keys and car keys.

### 3.7

1 Please take out your laptops... All laptops out, please.
2 **A** Hi. My name's Sam Smith. I have a reservation.
**B** Can I see your passport, please?
**A** Sure, here you are.
3 **A** Thank you. Goodbye.
**B** Excuse me, is this your credit card?
**A** Oh, yes! Whew, thank you so much!
4 Please turn off all cell phones and electronic devices.
5 **A** OK, Ms. Jones. Here's your key. You're in room 315.
**B** Thanks.
**A** David, please take Ms. Jones to room 315.
**C** Follow me.

### 3.11

**A** Excuse me. Is this your cell phone?
**B** Oh! Yes, it is. Thank you very much.
**A** You're welcome. It's a very nice phone! The new iPhone.
**B** Sorry? Oh, yes.
**A** A souvenir for your family? A T-shirt is only $25!
**B** OK. A Mets T-shirt, please.
**A** And a mug?
**B** Yes, and a mug!

### 3.17

1 **A** *The New York Times*, please.
**B** Here you are.
**A** How much is it?
**B** It's six dollars.
**A** Card OK?
**B** Sure.
2 **A** Excuse me, how much are those umbrellas?
**B** They're fifteen pounds.
**A** Ah, OK, no thanks.
3 **A** A charger, please, for this phone.
**B** Yes. Here you are.
**A** Thanks. How much is it?
**B** Eighteen dollars and 49 cents. Bag?
**A** No, thanks.
4 **A** A one-way ticket to Oxford, please.
**B** Thirty pounds twenty pence, please.
**A** Here you are.
**B** Thank you.

### 4.8

**Maria** Now, children. Sarah is your babysitter. Be good.
**Children** OK, Mom.
**Maria** Goodbye, Sarah.
**Sarah** Bye, Mrs. Taylor.
OK, let's order pizza and watch TV.
**Emma** My mother says no pizza and no TV.
**Sarah** Well, your mother isn't here, is she?

### 4.11

**Marina** What a nice card!
**Carly** Yeah, it's from my family.
**Marina** Can I see?
**Carly** Sure.
**Marina** Who's Paul? Is he your brother?
**Carly** Yes, he's my brother, and Hayley's his girlfriend.
**Marina** How old is Paul?
**Carly** He's twenty-nine. No, he's thirty.
**Marina** What about Shira? Is she your sister?
**Carly** No, Shira's my brother Jerry's wife. And Mia's their daughter.
**Marina** Oh yeah, I remember. The baby in the photo on your phone.
**Carly** Yes. She's so beautiful.
**Marina** So who's Nicole?
**Carly** She's my sister.
**Marina** Is John her husband?
**Carly** No, he's her boyfriend – they aren't married. Maybe one day.
**Marina** And how old's Nicole?
**Carly** She's twenty-six.
**Marina** And who's Buddy?
**Carly** He's my dog!
**Marina** Oh! What kind of dog is he?

### 4.12

1 Mercedes. It's German.
2 Jaguar. It's British.
3 Ferrari. It's Italian.
4 Chevrolet. It's American.
5 Hyundai. It's South Korean.
6 Honda. It's Japanese.

### 5.6

**Anna** My favorite meal of the day is dinner. I usually have dinner at home, but sometimes I have dinner at a restaurant. I usually have meat or fish and vegetables, and if I'm at a restaurant, I have a glass of iced tea.

### 5.7

**Will** My favorite meal of the day is lunch. I'm always hungry then. I have lunch at work – we have a cafeteria there. I have different things for lunch, but always with French fries – I love French fries. Sometimes a burger and French fries, sometimes fish and French fries. I drink water with my lunch, but after lunch I have a coffee, an espresso.
**Sarah** My favorite meal of the day is breakfast. I usually have it at home, but on Wednesdays, I have my yoga class, and I have breakfast at a café near the yoga studio. At home, I have fruit and an egg, and coffee or tea. But at the café, I have a muffin and hot chocolate.

## 5.14

**Taxi driver** Where to, ma'am?

**Eve** Hello. To the airport, please.

**Taxi driver** LaGuardia or JFK?

**Eve** JFK, please.
The traffic is bad this morning.

**Taxi driver** Yes. It's terrible. Where are you from?

**Eve** I'm from Boston, but I live in London. Are you from New York?

**Taxi driver** No, ma'am, I'm from Puerto Rico.

**Eve** Oh! Do you like New York?

**Taxi driver** It's a great city, but it's very expensive.

**Eve** London is very expensive, too. Do you have children?

**Taxi driver** I have two daughters.

**Eve** Oh, really? I have two sons and a daughter. David and Andrew are in college, and Carla's in high school...

**Taxi driver** OK. Here we are.

**Eve** How much is that?

**Taxi driver** That's $87.50.

**Eve** Oh. Here's $100. Keep the change.

**Taxi driver** Thanks. Have a good flight!

**Eve** I need to hurry. I'm late!

**Announcement** This is the final call for flight BA174 to London Heathrow. Would all passengers please proceed to gate 12?

## 5.15

**Announcement** This is the final call for flight BA174 to London Heathrow. Would all passengers please proceed to gate 12?

**Attendant 1** Can I see your passport and boarding pass, please?

**Eve** Here you are.

**Attendant 2** Good afternoon, ma'am. Your boarding pass, please? Seat 30D. This way, please.

**Eve** Oh, what a nice surprise! We meet again!

**Wendy** Oh, hello...

## 5.20

**1** It's twenty to nine.
**2** It's quarter after seven.
**3** It's five to two.
**4** It's twelve o'clock.
**5** It's eight-thirty.
**6** It's quarter after eleven.

## 6.11

**Interviewer** Hannah is a concert planner. She has a son, Kit, who's three years old. Hannah, what time do you usually get up?

**Hannah** I get up at 7:00. But I also get up in the night because Kit usually calls me. I tell him to sleep, but he usually comes into my bed.

**Interviewer** Do you usually feel tired?

**Hannah** Yes, I always feel tired!

**Interviewer** Do you take a shower or a bath in the morning?

**Hannah** I turn on the TV for Kit and then I take a bath in five minutes.

**Interviewer** Do you always have breakfast?

**Hannah** Yes, I need breakfast every day!

**Interviewer** Where do you have it?

**Hannah** I have it in a café on the way to work.

**Interviewer** What do you have for breakfast?

**Hannah** I have a coffee and sometimes I have some toast with avocado. It's delicious.

**Interviewer** What time do you go to work?

**Hannah** The perfect time to leave the house is at 8:00, but we usually leave at twenty after eight.

**Interviewer** Do you usually need to hurry in the morning?

**Hannah** Yes, always!

**Interviewer** Do you like mornings?

**Hannah** Yes. I love mornings.

**Interviewer** Why?

**Hannah** Because I love my job, and I'm happy to go to work!

## 7.2

**Interviewer** Do you go out on Friday night?

**Amelia** Yes, my husband, Ben, and I always go out for dinner or a movie.

**Interviewer** Where do you go?

**Amelia** We usually go to a nearby sushi restaurant because they have good food there. We sometimes meet friends there, too.

**Interviewer** What time do you get up on Saturday and Sunday?

**Amelia** On Saturday, at 5:00 a.m. On Sunday, it depends. At about 9:00 a.m.

**Interviewer** What do you usually do on Saturdays?

**Amelia** I work from 6:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. I'm a nurse, and, as you know, hospitals are open on Saturdays. Then after work, I go to the supermarket and buy food for the week. In the evening, we usually stay at home and watch TV. We like to watch comedy shows on Netflix.

**Interviewer** Where do you usually have lunch on Sunday?

**Amelia** With my sister and her family, or sometimes Ben's parents. My sister's husband usually makes a very good Sunday lunch. He's the cook in the family.

**Interviewer** Are you tired on Sunday evening?

**Amelia** Yes, because in the afternoon we need to do housework – cleaning, washing, things like that.

**Interviewer** Do you do the same thing every weekend?

**Amelia** Yeah – more or less. Except when we're on vacation.

**Interviewer** What's your favorite part of the weekend?

**Amelia** Friday night, definitely!

## 7.17

**1** **A** Do you like the Spider-Man movies?
**B** I like the last one. It's great. I don't know the others.

**2** **A** Do you like the Spider-Man movies?
**B** Yes. They're really good.
**A** Do you like Emma Stone?
**B** She's OK, but I prefer Zendaya in *No Way Home*.

**3** **A** Do you like the Spider-Man movies?
**B** No, I hate action movies. I think they're awful.

**4** **A** Do you like the Spider-Man movies?
**B** Yes, I love them. And the actors are fantastic.
**A** Do you like Tom Holland?
**B** I really like him. I think he's great.

**5** **A** Do you like the Spider-Man movies?
**B** Sorry, I don't know them.

## 7.20

**1** Messi's first name is Lionel.
**2** The second meal of the day is lunch.
**3** The third book in the trilogy *The Lord of the Rings* is *The Return of the King*.
**4** The fourth letter on the top row of a keyboard is R.
**5** The city with a famous street called Fifth Avenue is New York.
**6** The sixth president of the US was John Quincy Adams.
**7** The seventh *Star Wars* movie is *The Force Awakens*.
**8** The eighth month of the year is August.
**9** The Ninth Legion was a group of soldiers from Rome.

## 8.4

**Examiner** Good morning, Anna.

**Anna** Uh, good morning. I'm very nervous.

**Examiner** Can you start the car, please? OK. Turn right. Right, not left.

**Anna** Sorry!

**Examiner** The traffic lights are red! Stop! OK, can you park the car, please?

**Anna** Can I park here?

**Examiner** No, you can't. Look, it's "no parking." Park over there.

**Anna** Sorry. I'm *very* nervous.

**Examiner** Well, Anna, I'm sorry, but you need more driving lessons.

## 8.9

1 **A** Excuse me, can I sit here?
**B** Uh, yes, I think it's free.
**A** Thanks.

2 **A** Can I help you?
**B** Do you have this T-shirt in large?
**A** Just a moment. Sorry, we only have small and medium right now. I can call and see if they have a large in another store.
**B** No, that's OK, thanks.

3 **A** Are you ready to order?
**B** Yes, can I have the burger but with salad, not fries?
**A** Yes, ma'am, that's fine. And for you, sir?
**C** The pasta, please.
**A** And to drink?

4 **A** Hey! You can't sing here.
**B** Why not?
**A** Because you need a permit.
**B** Where can I get a permit?
**A** You need to go online and look for...

## 9.6

1 **A** Oh, look! An LA Galaxy shirt. It's perfect for Henry!
**B** Yes, good idea. Oh...it's very expensive.
**A** Soccer shirts are always expensive. OK. What can we get for Jessica?
**B** She likes soccer, too.
**A** Yeah, but she never wears soccer shirts. What about this bag?
**B** I don't know. Does she like bags?
**A** She loves bags...

2 **A** Tom, do I need my swimming things?
**B** Yes, the hotel's near the beach. Do you see my phone charger?
**A** Yes, here it is. Do you want me to put it in the suitcase or in your bag?
**B** In my bag, please. Thanks.

3 **A** Good morning. How can I help you?
**B** Hello, I want a car for three days, please – for today, Tuesday, and Wednesday.
**A** No problem. What kind of car would you like?
**B** A small car is fine. It's just me.
**A** Is a Honda Civic OK?
**B** Yes, great.
**A** Can I see your driver's license?
**B** Yes, here you are.

4 **A** Is that a number 13?
**B** Yes. I think it is. No, it's a 23.
**A** Another 23? I don't believe it! That's the third one. And no 13.
**B** Another one's coming now. Let's see. Yes. That's a 13.
**A** At last!

## 9.15

**Interviewer** Hi, Neah. Tell us a litttle about your experience. Where are you working?
**Neah** I'm working in a clothing store called Rue21.
**Interviewer** What kind of clothes does Rue21 have?
**Neah** Uh, well, clothes for men and women, casual clothes, pants, T-shirts, sweaters, things like that.
**Interviewer** What do you do every day?
**Neah** Well, uh, I help the customers find the clothes that they're looking for. It's a big store and it has a lot of things. People sometimes can't see the things that they want.
**Interviewer** Do you like working there?
**Neah** Yes, I love it. The people are really nice to me. I'm making a lot of new friends.
**Interviewer** Is there anything you don't like?
**Neah** Well, we can't sit down, we're standing up all the time. So that's really hard.
**Interviewer** But, in general, you're happy?
**Neah** Oh, yes. And when my internship ends, they say I can work here in the summer! That's great for me. I really like working in a clothing store.
**Interviewer** What do you wear at work?
**Neah** We wear clothes from the store.
**Interviewer** Are the clothes that you're wearing today from Rue21?
**Neah** Yes, they are!

## 10.6

**Eric** Louisa, time to get up.
**Louisa** OK. What time is it?
**Eric** It's six-thirty. Breakfast is at seven.
**Louisa** Is it a nice day?
**Eric** Let's see. Uh! Louisa, quick! Come here! Look at that!
**Louisa** What is it?
**Eric** Look! Over there.
**Louisa** Where?
**Eric** There. In the lake. There! Can't you see? There's something in the lake. Uh! It's moving. Can you see it now?
**Louisa** Yes. What is it?
**Eric** I don't know. Quick, take a photo.
**Louisa** I can't see it now. Can you?
**Eric** No, I can't. I can't see anything now. Let's see those photos, Louisa. Wow! I don't believe it. Look at that!

## 10.13

**Detective** Interview with Walter Miller at 8 p.m. on Tuesday, November 14th. Are you Walter Miller?
**Walter** Yes, I am.
**Detective** What do you do, Walter?
**Walter** I'm a taxi driver.
**Detective** And where do you live?
**Walter** At 14 Market Street.
**Detective** Do you know the suspect, Jason Brown?
**Walter** Yes, I know him. He's my friend. We were at school together.
**Detective** Where were you yesterday afternoon at five o'clock?
**Walter** Yesterday at five o'clock... I was in my taxi. I was in my taxi all afternoon.
**Detective** And at seven o'clock? Where were you then?
**Walter** I was in a restaurant. Pasta Place.
**Detective** Where is it exactly?
**Walter** On South Street. Near the train station.
**Detective** Were you alone?
**Walter** No, I was with Jason.
**Detective** Were you only with Jason?
**Walter** Uh, no. My wife was there. And Jason's wife.
**Detective** Jason's wife? She was with you?
**Walter** Uh, yes.
**Detective** Are you sure?
**Walter** Yes...no...I can't remember.
**Detective** You can't remember who you were with yesterday? Very interesting...

## 11.6

Miriam really liked her job – it was very interesting. I worked from home, so I was with the children a lot and I loved it. In general, life was good. It was cheap – cheaper than in the UK. We joined a sports club, where the children learned to swim, and I played a lot of tennis, one of my favorite sports.

The people in Durham were very friendly. They often invited us to their homes. It was easy to meet people at the sports club, or at the university where Miriam worked. And there were so many new places to see! On weekends, we visited some of the beautiful national parks. They were very different from English parks! In one park, there was a sign saying "Don't disturb the snakes" – Sacha loved it!

I also remember a trip to a country music festival at a blueberry farm. It was fantastic. First, we listened to the music, and then we picked a lot of blueberries – they're Elena's favorite fruit. But after that trip, she didn't want to eat a blueberry for at least two weeks!

We stayed in Durham for a year. After that, we returned to England because my wife's job finished. But we loved our life in the US, and we're thinking of going back there in maybe two or three years.

## 11.9

**Ben** And who are you?

**Linda** Um, Dad, this is Dylan.

**Ben** What are you doing here, Dylan?

**Dylan** Well, uh, you see, Linda and I wanted to do our homework together.

**Ben** Oh, did you? And what kind of homework was it, exactly?

## 11.15

1 **A** Excuse me?

**B** Yes?

**A** Is there a coffee shop near here?

**B** Yes, there's one on South Street. It's next to the movie theater, on the right.

**A** Thanks.

2 **A** Excuse me. Is there a Chinese restaurant near here?

**B** Yes, there's one on King Street, between the bank and the gym.

**A** Thank you.

3 **A** Excuse me. Is there a phone store near here?

**B** Yes, there's one on North Street, next to the hotel, on the left.

**A** Thanks.

4 **A** Excuse me. Where's the park?

**B** It's on Boston Road, across from the gym.

**A** Oh, great. Thank you.

## 1A verb *be* (singular): *I* and *you*

**1.2** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| | Full form | Contraction |
|---|---|---|
| + | **I am** Helen.<br>**You are** Tom. | **I'm** Helen.<br>**You're** Tom. |
| − | **I am not** Ellen.<br>**You are not** Dom. | **I'm not** Ellen.<br>**You aren't** Dom. |

- *I'm Helen.* **NOT** ~~*i'm Helen*~~.
- ***I'm*** *Helen.* **NOT** ~~*Am Helen*~~.

**Negative contractions**

*I am not = I'm not*

*You are not = You aren't* **OR** *You're not*

**1.3** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| ? | + | − |
|---|---|---|
| **Am I** in room 2? | Yes, **you are.** | No, **you aren't.** |
| **Are you** Mike? | Yes, **I am.** | No, **I'm not.** |

**Word order in questions**

+ *I'm in room 2. You're Tom.*

? *Am I in room 2? Are you Tom?*

## 1B verb *be* (singular): *he*, *she*, *it*

**1.19** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| | Full form | Contraction |
|---|---|---|
| + | I am from the US.<br>You are from Peru.<br>**He is** from Brazil.<br>**She is** from Spain.<br>**It is** from China. | I'm from the US.<br>You're from Peru.<br>**He's** from Brazil.<br>**She's** from Spain.<br>**It's** from China. |







- he = man she = woman it = thing

**1.20** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| | Full form | Contraction |
|---|---|---|
| − | I am not from Canada.<br>You are not from Vietnam.<br>**He is not** from South Korea.<br>**She is not** from Japan.<br>**It is not** from Mexico. | I'm not from Canada.<br>You aren't from Vietnam.<br>**He isn't** from South Korea.<br>**She isn't** from Japan.<br>**It isn't** from Mexico. |

**Negative contractions**

*He is not = He isn't* **OR** *He's not*

**1.21** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| ? | + | − |
|---|---|---|
| Am I in room 2? | Yes, you are. | No, you aren't. |
| Are you from England? | Yes, I am. | No, I'm not. |
| **Is he** from Chile? | Yes, **he is.** | No, **he isn't.** |
| **Is she** from Egypt? | Yes, **she is.** | No, **she isn't.** |
| **Is it** good? | Yes, **it is.** | No, **it isn't.** |

**Word order in questions**

+ *She's from Argentina.*

? *Is she from Argentina?*

? With *What* and *Where*:
*What's your name? Where are you from?*
*Where's he from?*

# 1A

**a** Complete with *I'm* or *You're*.



Hello. I'm Maria. What's your name?



1 Hi. _____ Tony.



2 Hello. _____ your teacher. _____ in my class.




3 _____ in room 4.




4 _____ in room 3.

**b** Complete with *I'm not* or *You aren't*.




I'm not Tom. I'm Tony.




1 _____ in room 5. You're in room 4.




2 _____ in room 6. You're in room 7.




3 _____ Marina. I'm Marisa.

**c** Make questions.

You're Sam. Are you Sam?

1 I'm in room 4. _____?

2 You're Silvia. _____?

3 I'm in room 3. _____?

**d** Complete the conversations. Use contractions where possible.

**A** Hello. Are you Liz? **B** No, I'm not. I'm Mei Lin.

1 **A** _____ I in room 8? **B** No, you _____. You're in room 6.

2 **A** _____ you in room 4? **B** No, I _____. I'm in room 5.

3 **A** _____ you Henry? **B** Yes, I _____. Nice to meet you!

4 **A** _____ I in your class? **B** Yes, you _____. I _____ your teacher.

p.6

# 1B

**a** Complete with *He's*, *She's*, or *It's*.

**A** Where's London?
**B** It's in England.

1 **A** Where's Lisa from?
**B** _____ from Canada.

2 **A** Where's Cairo?
**B** _____ in Egypt.

3 **A** Where's Mario from?
**B** _____ from Brazil.

4 **A** Where's Beijing?
**B** _____ in China.

5 **A** Where's Charles from?
**B** _____ from England.

6 **A** Where's Maria from?
**B** _____ from Peru.

7 **A** Where's Phuket?
**B** _____ in Thailand.

8 **A** Where's Carlos from?
**B** _____ from Mexico.

**b** Complete with *is*, *'s*, or *isn't*.

**A** Is Ana from Mexico? **B** No, she isn't. She's from Spain.

1 **A** Where ___ Osaka? ___ it in Japan? **B** Yes, it ___.

2 **A** ___ Jon from the US? **B** No, he ___ from South Korea.

3 **A** Where ___ she from? **B** She ___ from Rio.

4 **A** ___ Hai from China? **B** No, he ___. He ___ from Vietnam.

5 **A** ___ Québec City in France? **B** No, it ___. It ___ in Canada.

**c** Complete the conversations with the correct form of *be*. Use contractions where possible.

**A** Are you from Chile?
**B** No, I'm not. I'm from Argentina.

1 **A** Where ___ Manchester? ___ it in the UK?
**B** Yes, it ___.

2 **A** Where ___ Alex from? ___ he from Mexico?
**B** No, he ___. He ___ from the US.

3 **A** Where ___ you from?
**B** I ___ from Toronto.

4 **A** What ___ your name?
**B** My name ___ Ana. I ___ from Chicago.
**A** You ___ from Chicago! I ___ from Chicago, too! It ___ a great city.

p.8

## 2A verb *be* (plural): *we*, *you*, *they*

**2.6** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| | Full form | Contraction |
|---|---|---|
| *be* + | I am Korean. | I'm Korean. |
| | You are Brazilian. | You're Brazilian. |
| | He is Spanish. | He's Spanish. |
| | She is Thai. | She's Thai. |
| | It is Japanese. | It's Japanese. |
| | **We are** American. | **We're** American. |
| | **You are** Chilean. | **You're** Chilean. |
| | **They are** Peruvian. | **They're** Peruvian. |

- *you* = singular and plural





- *they* = men, women, and things

**2.7** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| | Full form | Contraction |
|---|---|---|
| *be* − | I am not Korean. | I'm not Korean. |
| | You are not Brazilian. | You aren't Brazilian. |
| | He is not Spanish. | He isn't Spanish. |
| | She is not Thai. | She isn't Thai. |
| | It is not Japanese. | It isn't Japanese. |
| | **We are not** American. | **We aren't** American. |
| | **You are not** Chilean. | **You aren't** Chilean. |
| | **They are not** Peruvian. | **They aren't** Peruvian. |

**Negative contractions**

*We are not = We aren't* **OR** *We're not*
*You are not = You aren't* **OR** *You're not*
*They are not = They aren't* **OR** *They're not*

**2.8** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

***be* plural, ? and short answers**

| ? | + | − |
|---|---|---|
| Am I in room 2? | Yes, you are. | No, you aren't. |
| Are you Linda? | Yes, I am. | No, I'm not. |
| Is he Brazilian? | Yes, he is. | No, he isn't. |
| Is she from Peru? | Yes, she is. | No, she isn't. |
| Is it good? | Yes, it is. | No, it isn't. |
| **Are we** late? | Yes, **you are.** | No, **you aren't.** |
| **Are you** from the UK? | Yes, **we are.** | No, **we aren't.** |
| **Are they** Mexican? | Yes, **they are.** | No, **they aren't.** |

**Word order in questions**

+ *They're from Canada.*
? *Are they from Canada?*

## 2B *Wh-* and *How* questions with *be*

**2.17** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| Question word(s) | Verb | Subject | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Who | 's | Tom? | He's a friend. |
| What | 's | your email? | It's john.zyx@oup.com. |
| Where | are | you from? | I'm from Toronto, Canada. |
| When | 's | the concert? | It's on Tuesday. |
| How | are | you? | I'm fine, thanks. |
| How old | is | she? | She's ten. |

**Word order**

+ Subject, verb — *They're American.*
? Verb, subject — *Are they American?*
? Question, verb, subject — *Where are they from?*

**Contractions with question words**

We can contract *is* after question words.

*What's her name? = What is her name?*
*Where's he from? = Where is he from?*
*How's Anna? = How is Anna?*
*How old's Jon? = How old is Jon?*

Don't contract *is* in a question when the last word is a pronoun (*he*, *she*, *it*, etc.).

*How old is she?* **NOT** ~~*How old's she?*~~
*Where is he?* **NOT** ~~*Where's he?*~~

## 2A

**a** Change the **bold** word(s) to a pronoun: *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, *they*.

**Anna and Tom** are from London. They're from London.

1 **Diana and I** are in room 4. _____'re in room 4.
2 **Machu Picchu** is in Peru. _____'s in Peru.
3 Are **Mark and James** in France? Are _____ in France?
4 Where is **Rosa** from? Where's _____ from?
5 **Mira and Rita** are Brazilian. _____'re Brazilian.
6 **Paul** isn't in the hotel. _____ isn't in the hotel.
7 **You and Sara** are in class 2. _____'re in class 2.
8 **Jim and I** are from the US. _____'re from the US.
9 **Honda and Toyota** are Japanese. _____'re Japanese.

**b** Make ➕ or ➖ sentences, or ❓. Use *we*, *you*, or *they*.

Luisa and I / Brazilian ➕ We're Brazilian.
You and Henry / teachers ➖ You aren't teachers.
/ Liz and Sam / in Egypt ❓ Are they in Egypt?

1 Ana and I / Mexican ➖ _____
2 You, Max, and John / in class 4 ➕ _____
3 / Mike and Peter / English ❓ _____
4 / Linda and I / in class 4 ❓ _____
5 You and Lucy / in class 4 ➖ _____
6 Pam and I / on vacation ➕ _____

**c** Complete the conversations. Use contractions where possible.

They aren't Thai. They're Vietnamese, from Hanoi.

1 **A** _____ you from the US?
**B** No, we _____ American. We _____ English.
2 **A** _____ they Spanish?
**B** Yes, they _____. They _____ from Madrid.
3 Nico is from Toronto. He _____ from Montreal.
4 Sorry, you _____ in room 20, you're in room 22.
5 **A** _____ Nike Canadian?
**B** No, it _____. It _____ American.
6 **A** _____ we late?
**B** Yes, you _____. It _____ 9:30!
7 I _____ Sara Smith, I'm Sara Simpson.
8 They _____ from New York. They're from Texas.
9 **A** Where's Laura from?
**B** She _____ from Recife.
**A** _____ Recife in Brazil?
**B** Yes, it _____.

p.12

## 2B

**a** Complete with a question word.

~~How~~ How old What (x2) When Where (x2) Who (x2)

**A** How are you?
**B** Fine, thanks. And you?

1 **A** _____'s the concert?
**B** On Tuesday at 7:30.
**A** _____ is it?
**B** In the music hall.
2 **A** _____'s your name?
**B** Jessica.
3 **A** _____ is she?
**B** She's my friend Julia.
**A** _____'s she from?
**B** Argentina.
4 **A** _____'s your email?
**B** It's jbl098.zyx@oup.com.
5 **A** _____'s that?
**B** My brother Adrian.
**A** _____ is he?
**B** He's 25.

**b** Order the words to make questions. Use contractions where possible.

are how old you? How old are you?

1 she who is? _____
2 what phone your number is? _____
3 is where room 4? _____
4 married is Marta? _____
5 your English class is when? _____
6 your number is phone 917-555-0362? _____
7 is his email what? _____
8 Pedro how is old? _____

**c** Write questions to complete the conversation. Use contractions where possible.

**A** What's your name?
**B** Pedro Guzmán.
**A** [1] _____?
**B** Monterrey.
**A** [2] _____ Monterrey?
**B** It's in Mexico.
**A** [3] _____?
**B** pguzman.zyx@oup.com.
**A** Thanks. [4] _____?
**B** 52-81-8150-9304.
**A** [5] _____?
**B** I'm 19.

p.14

## 3A singular and plural nouns, *a* / *an*

**3.3** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

**Singular nouns, *a* / *an***

What is **it**?



It's **a book**.



It's **a key**.



It's **an umbrella**.

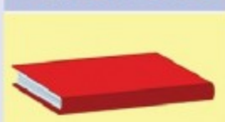



It's **an ID card**.

- *What is it?* **NOT** ~~*What's it?*~~
- We use *a* / *an* + singular noun.
- We use *a* + word beginning with a consonant, e.g., *a bag, a phone*.
- We use *an* + word beginning with a vowel, e.g., *an umbrella*.

**3.4** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

**Plural nouns**



What is it?
It's a book.



What are **they**?
They're **book**s.



What is it?
It's a key.



What are **they**?
They're **key**s.



What is it?
It's a watch.



What are **they**?
They're **watch**es.




What is it?
It's a dictionary.




What are **they**?
They're **dictionaries**.

**Spelling rules**

| | Singular | Plural | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | a bag<br>a day | bag**s**<br>day**s** | add *-s* |
| 2 | a class | class**es** /ɪz/ | add *-es* (after *ch*, *sh*, *s*, *ss*, *x*) |
| 3 | a country | countr**ies** | consonant + *y* = ~~*y*~~ *-ies* |

***the***

*Look at **the** board. Open **the** door. Close **the** windows.*

We use *the* + singular or plural nouns, e.g., *the door, the windows*.

## 3B *this / that / these / those*

**3.12** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.



What's **this**?
It's a key.



What are **these**?
They're keys.



What's **that**?
It's a cat.



What are **those**?
They're cats.

- We use *this* / *these* for things near us (things here).
- We use *that* / *those* for things that aren't near us (things there or over there).
- *this* / *that* = singular, *these* / *those* = plural.
- *This*, *that*, *these*, and *those* are pronouns or adjectives.
  ***This** is my book.* (= pronoun)
  ***This** book is very nice.* (= adjective)
- We also use *this* / *that* / *these* / *those* for people, e.g., *This is my brother. Who are those girls over there?*

***here, there, over there***



here



there



over there

## 3A

**a** Complete the chart.

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| It's a pen. | They're pens. |
| 1 _____. | They're phones. |
| 2 It's a watch. | _____. |
| 3 _____. | They're umbrellas. |
| 4 It's a dictionary. | _____. |
| 5 It's a key. | _____. |
| 6 It's a city. | _____. |
| 7 _____. | They're emails. |
| 8 It's a passport. | _____. |
| 9 _____. | They're tablets. |

**b** Write questions and answers.

What is it ?  It's a laptop .

1 _____?  _____.

2 _____?  _____.

3 _____?  _____.

4 _____?  _____.

5 _____?  _____.

p.18

## 3B

**a** Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with *this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*.

This isn't a very good book.



1 Are _____ your T-shirts?



2 _____ are my children.



3 **A** Is _____ your phone over there?
**B** No, my phone's here.



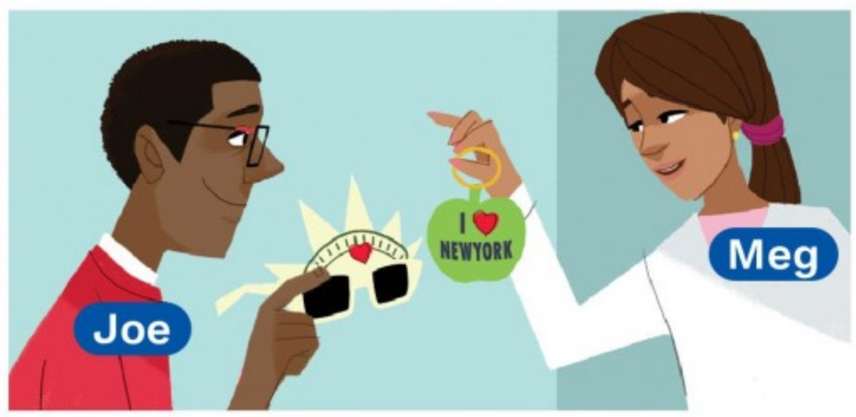
4 **A** Look at _____!
**B** They're great!



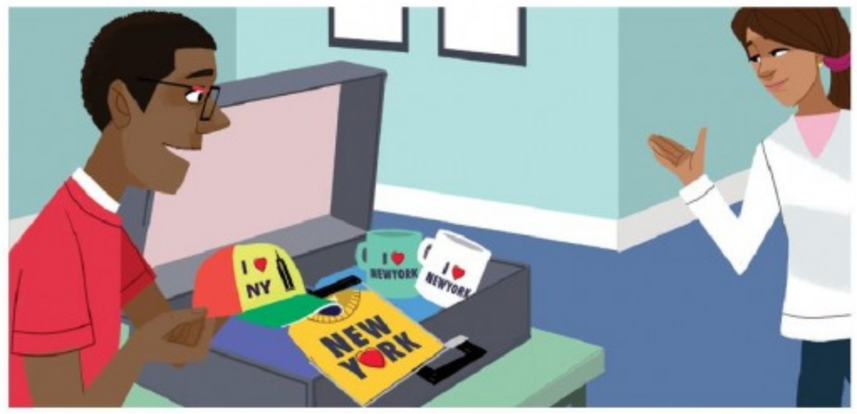
5 Who's _____? Is he your brother?



**b** Look at the pictures. Circle the correct word(s).




**Meg** What is *this* / *that*?
**Joe** [1]*They're* / *It's* a key chain from New York.
**Meg** Oh, OK.
**Joe** And [2]*these* / *those* are sunglasses. [3]*It's* / *They're* great!




**Meg** Are [4]*these* / *those* mugs?
**Joe** Yes, [5]*it is* / *they are*. For our coffee. And [6]*that* / *this* is a cap for Jenny.
**Meg** What [7]*'s that* / *are those*?
**Joe** [8]*It's* / *They're* a T-shirt. It's for you!
**Meg** Oh...thanks.

p.21

## 4A possessive adjectives, possessive ’s

**4.9** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| Possessive adjectives | |
|---|---|
| **I**’m from the US. | **My** name is Sara. |
| **You**’re Canadian. | **Your** name is Kim. |
| **He**’s from China. | **His** name is Ming. |
| **She**’s Japanese. | **Her** name is Satoko. |
| **It**’s a French restaurant. | **Its** name is Marseille. |
| **We**’re from Brazil. | **Our** names are Selma and Luis. |
| **You**’re Chilean. | **Your** names are Matias and Sofía. |
| **They**’re from Mexico. | **Their** names are Pedro and Maria. |

- *your names, our books, their coats* **NOT** ~~*yours names*~~, ~~*ours books*~~, ~~*theirs coats*~~
- *its* = for things or animals, e.g.,
  *Pizzeria Marco is a good restaurant.* ***Its*** *phone number is 212-555-0187.*
  *Senegal is in Africa.* ***Its*** *flag is red, yellow, and green.*
  *Look at that fish!* ***Its*** *eyes are yellow.*

**It’s or *its*?**

*It’s = it is* ***It’s*** *a French restaurant.*

*Its* = possessive ***Its*** *name is Marseille.*

**4.10** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| Possessive ’s |
|---|
| This is Jack**’s** car. |
| Ella is Ben**’s** wife. |
| Maria is Carlos**’s** sister. |
| My sister**’s** name is Molly. |
| This is my parent**s’** house. |

- We use *’s* after a person to talk about family and things, e.g., *Ann’s brother, Jim’s car.*
- We use *’* after plural words for people that end in -s, e.g., *my two sons’ room*, **BUT** *my two children’s room.*

**’s**

*She**’s** American. Her name**’s** Emma.* (*’s = is*)

*Emma is Maria**’s** daughter.* (*’s* = possessive *s*)

**pronunciation of ’s**

*’s* usually = /s/, e.g., *Jack’s* or /z/, e.g., *Maria’s.*

*’s after a name that ends in s* = /ɪz/, e.g., *Carlos’s* = /ˈkɑrləsɪz/.

## 4B adjectives

**4.18** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

1 An Audi is **expensive**.
  It’s **fast**.
2 An Audi is an **expensive car**.
  It’s a **fast car**.
3 They’re **old houses**.
  My **glasses** are **new**.
4 He’s **tall**.
  She’s **tall**, too.



**He’s tall. She’s tall, too.**

1 We use adjectives after the verb *be*, e.g.,
  *An Audi is expensive.* **NOT** ~~*An Audi expensive is.*~~
2 We use adjectives before a noun, e.g.,
  *It’s a fast car.* **NOT** ~~*It’s a car fast.*~~
3 Adjectives are the same for singular and plural, e.g.,
  *It’s an old house. They’re old houses.* **NOT** ~~*They’re olds houses.*~~
4 Adjectives are the same for 🚹 and 🚺.

## 4A

**a** Complete with *my*, *your* (singular), *his*, *her*, *its*, *your* (plural), *our*, or *their*.

I'm American. My name is William.

1 They're from Vietnam. _____ names are Binh and Vu.

2 **A** What's _____ name?
**B** I'm Julia. Nice to meet you.

3 He's Argentinian. _____ name is Roberto.

4 It's a good hotel, and _____ restaurant is fantastic.

5 They're Mexican. _____ last name is Romero.

6 I know a very good restaurant in Paris. _____ name is Café des Fleurs.

7 _____ name is Tina. She's Brazilian.

8 Lisa and Amy are American, but _____ husbands are British.

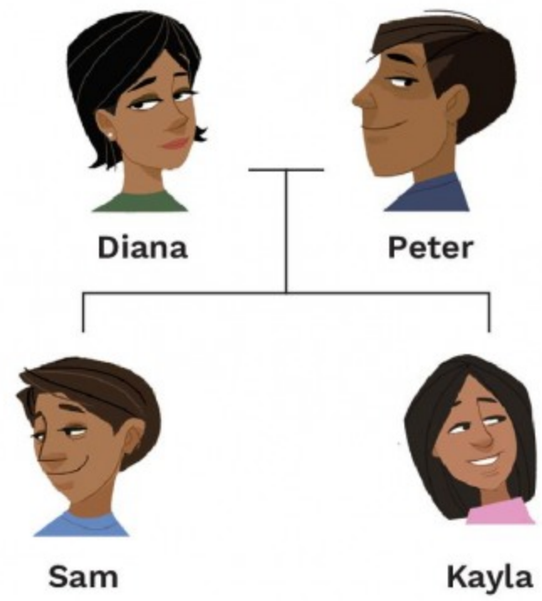
9 **A** We're Jane and Mark Kelley. We have a reservation.
**B** You're in room 22. This is _____ key.

10 Here are _____ coffees. The cappuccino is for you, the latte is for Tom, and the Americano is for me.

11 I'm Azra, and this is _____ husband, Ahmet.

12 **A** Are those your children?
**B** No, they aren't. _____ children are over there.

**b** Write sentences about Sam's family. Use the names and *'s*.




Kayla / Sam — Kayla is Sam's sister.

1 Peter / Kayla _____

2 Diana / Sam _____

3 Kayla / Peter _____

4 Peter / Diana _____

5 Sam / Peter _____

6 Diana / Peter _____

7 Sam / Kayla _____

p.25

## 4B

**a** Write sentences with *It's a / an* or *They're* + adjective + noun.




(great)
It's a great restaurant.

1  (old) _____

2  (black) _____

3  (new) _____

4  (big) _____

5  (expensive) _____

6  (good) _____

**b** Order the words to make sentences.

blue is bag my — My bag is blue.

1 beautiful a day it's _____

2 is husband nice very Amy's _____

3 questions difficult they're very _____

4 phone cheap a is this _____

5 photo it's terrible a _____

6 Laura teacher is fantastic a _____

7 very is cat old our _____

8 restaurant this good a very isn't _____

9 long it's a exercise very _____

10 is ugly very dog their _____

11 expensive Italian bags are very _____

12 very this is small room a _____

p.27

## 5A simple present + and −: *I*, *you*, *we*, *they*

**5.5** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| + | − |
|---|---|
| **I have** cereal for breakfast. | **I don't have** eggs for breakfast. (*don't = do not*) |
| **You have** rice for lunch. | **You don't have** pasta for lunch. |
| **We have** coffee for breakfast. | **We don't have** tea for breakfast. |
| **They have** fish for dinner. | **They don't have** meat for dinner. |

- We use the simple present to talk about present habits (= things we usually do), e.g., *I have coffee for breakfast.* We also use the simple present to talk about things that are always true, e.g., *In my country, we eat a lot of rice.*
- Simple present + and − is the same for *I*, *you* (singular and plural), *we*, and *they*.
- We make − sentences with *don't*, e.g., *We don't have coffee.* **NOT** ~~*We not have coffee.*~~



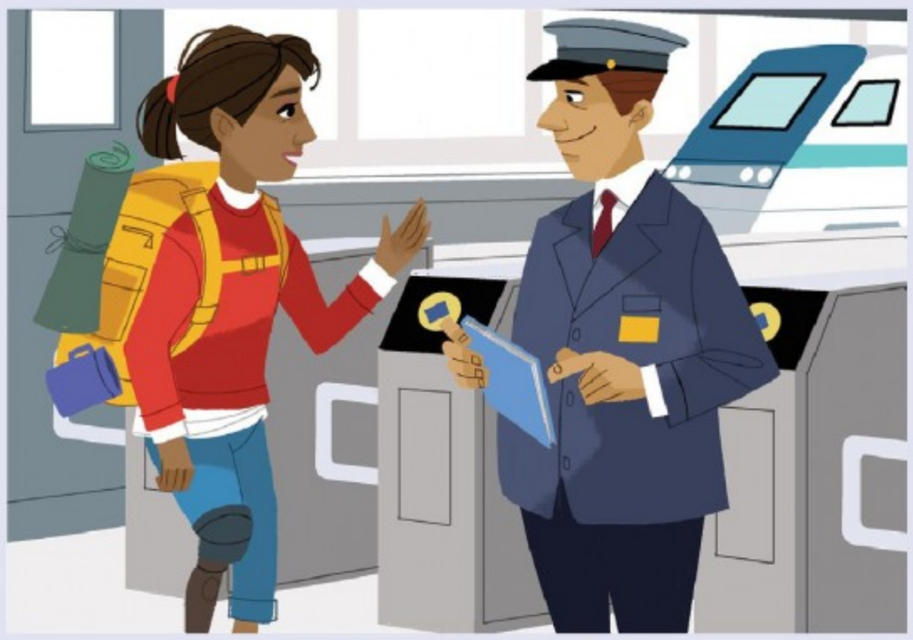
**They have fish for dinner.**

## 5B simple present ?: *I*, *you*, *we*, *they*

**5.11** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| ? | + | − |
|---|---|---|
| **Do I need** a ticket? | Yes, **you do**. | No, **you don't**. |
| **Do you live** near here? | Yes, **I do**. | No, **I don't**. |
| **Do we have** good seats? | Yes, **we do**. | No, **we don't**. |
| **Do they like** children? | Yes, **they do**. | No, **they don't**. |

- Simple present ? is the same for *I*, *you* (singular and plural), *we*, and *they*.
- We use *do* to make questions: *Do you live here?* **NOT** ~~*You live here?*~~ **OR** ~~*Live you here?*~~
- The word order for simple present questions is: auxiliary *(do)*, subject (*you*, *they*, etc.), base form (*need*, *live*, etc.).



**Do I need a ticket?**

## 5A

**a** Write ⊞ or ⊟ sentences.

We (have)  We have sandwiches for lunch.

I (not like)  I don't like meat.

1 I (have)  _____ for breakfast.

2 We (not drink)  _____ in the evening.

3 They (like)  _____.

4 You (eat)  _____.

5 We (eat)  _____ in the evening.

6 I (not have)  _____ in my coffee.

7 You (not like)  _____.

8 The children (eat)  _____.

**b** Complete with the **bold** verb. Write one ⊞ sentence and one ⊟ sentence.

**like**

I'm Italian, but I don't like pasta.

My friends and I like fast food, especially pizzas and burgers.

1 **have**

People in the US _____ a big lunch – they usually have a sandwich.

We always _____ lunch with my family on Sundays.

2 **eat**

I _____ meat. I'm a vegetarian.

They _____ a lot of fish and rice in Japan.

3 **drink**

You _____ a lot of coffee! It isn't good for you.

They _____ coffee. They only drink tea.

4 **go**

We _____ to restaurants. They're very expensive.

I don't have breakfast at home.

I _____ to a café.

p.31

## 5B

**a** Complete with *do* or *don't*.

I don't live here. I live near the park.

1 **A** _____ you have children?
**B** No, I _____.

2 I _____ like this photo. It's terrible.

3 **A** _____ you want a coffee?
**B** No, thanks. I _____ drink coffee.

4 I _____ have brothers and sisters. I'm an only child.

5 **A** _____ you listen to music on the radio?
**B** I _____ listen to pop music, but I listen to Classic FM. It's a classical music station.

6 **A** Excuse me, _____ you work here?
**B** No, I _____. Sorry.

7 **A** _____ you like American TV shows?
**B** No, I _____. I _____ watch TV. I read.

8 **A** _____ you have a big family?
**B** Yes, I _____. I have two brothers and three sisters.

9 **A** _____ you speak Spanish?
**B** No, I _____. I only speak English.

10 **A** _____ you like Saturdays?
**B** Yes, I _____. I _____ work on weekends.

**b** Order the words to make statements or questions.

umbrella have do you an? Do you have an umbrella?

1 know don't I. _____

2 here you near do live? _____

3 like I soccer don't. _____

4 sandwich want you a do? _____

5 school work in that they. _____

6 sisters two have I. _____

7 French you speak do? _____

8 don't big need a I car. _____

9 Chinese to classes you do go? _____

10 a don't I watch have. _____

11 to in the music car listen you do?

_____

12 work I don't Sundays on. _____

p.32

## 6A simple present: *he*, *she*, *it*

**6.5** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| + | − | ? | + | − |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I work. | I don't work. | Do I work? | Yes, I do. | No, I don't. |
| You work. | You don't work. | Do you work? | Yes, I do. | No, I don't. |
| **He works.** | **He doesn't work.** | **Does he work?** | **Yes, he does.** | **No, he doesn't.** |
| **She works.** | **She doesn't work.** | **Does she work?** | **Yes, she does.** | **No, she doesn't.** |
| **It works.** | **It doesn't work.** | **Does it work?** | **Yes, it does.** | **No, it doesn't.** |
| We work. | We don't work. | Do we work? | Yes, we do. | No, we don't. |
| You work. | You don't work. | Do you work? | Yes, you do. | No, you don't. |
| They work. | They don't work. | Do they work? | Yes, they do. | No, they don't. |

**? with *What* and *Where***

***What*** *do you do?*
***Where*** *does he work?*

- Simple present + *he / she / it* = verb + *s*.
- Simple present − *he / she / it* = *doesn't* + verb (*doesn't = does not*).
- Simple present ? *he / she / it* = *Does* + *he / she / it* + verb.

  Remember the word order for simple present questions (see **5B** *p.100*).

| **Spelling rules 3rd person *s*** | | |
|---|---|---|
| I work in an office.<br>I live in Peru. | He work**s** in an office.<br>He live**s** in Peru. | + *s* |
| I watch CNN.<br>I finish work at 8:00. | She watch**es** CNN.<br>The movie finish**es** at 8:00. | + *es* (after *ch*, *sh*, *s*, *ss*, *x*) |
| I study history. | He stud**ies** history. | consonant + *y* = *y* -*ies* |

- Spelling rules for 3rd person *s* are the same as for plural nouns.

***have, go, do***

These verbs are irregular in the *he / she / it* form of the simple present:

*I have* — *he / she / it* ***has*** /hæz/
*I do* — *he / she / it* ***does*** /dʌz/
*I go* — *he / she / it* ***goes*** /goʊz/

## 6B adverbs of frequency

**6.15** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

I **always** have breakfast.
They **usually** finish work at 5:00.
She **sometimes** watches TV in the evening.
He **never** eats meat.
Does she **usually** go shopping on Saturday?
What time do you **usually** get up?




- Be careful with the position of adverbs of frequency:
  *I always have breakfast.* **NOT** ~~*Always I have breakfast. I have always breakfast.*~~
  *Does she usually go shopping on Saturday?* **NOT** ~~*Does usually she go shopping on Saturday? Usually does she go shopping on Saturday?*~~
- With *never*, we use an + verb: *He never eats meat.* **NOT** ~~*He doesn't never eat meat.*~~



**He never eats meat.**

## 6A

**a** **Rewrite the sentences.**

I live in an apartment. She *lives in an apartment*.

1 They read magazines. He _____.

2 I study French. My sister _____.

3 Do you speak English?
_____ he _____?

4 I don't eat fish. My brother _____.

5 Where do you work?
Where _____ your wife _____?

6 You don't speak Italian. Tom _____.

7 Do you like cats?
_____ she _____?

8 I have two brothers.
Andrew _____.

9 What do you eat for lunch?
What _____ he _____?

10 We watch a lot of TV.
My mother _____.

11 What do you do?
What _____ your son _____?

12 We don't need a new car. Maria _____.

**b** **Put the verb (in parentheses) in the correct form.**

They *don't live* near here. (not live)

1 She _____ to the radio in the car. (listen)

2 My brother _____ to college in Boston. (go)

3 We _____ on weekends. (not work)

4 _____ Angela _____ with her mother? (live)

5 The show _____ at 9:30. (finish)

6 She usually _____ fruit for breakfast. (have)

7 We _____ TV on weekends. (not watch)

8 _____ you _____ coffee or tea? (want)

9 Where _____ your children _____ to school? (go)

10 Linda _____ meat, fish, or eggs. She's a vegan. (not eat)

11 _____ Tran _____ his new job? (like)

12 Luisa _____ brothers or sisters. (not have)

p.36

## 6B

**a** **Order the words to complete the sentences.**

drink never coffee I

*I never drink coffee* after dinner.

1 husband goes my sometimes
_____ to the gym.

2 take always I
_____ a shower in the morning.

3 usually we have
_____ breakfast at home.

4 go I never
_____ to bed before 12:00.

5 usually go they do
_____ to work by bus?

6 Jan has sometimes
_____ a sandwich for lunch.

7 close the does restaurant usually
_____ late?

8 goes she never
_____ shopping after work.

9 usually I do
_____ my homework on the weekend.

10 sometimes make I
_____ fish for dinner.

**b** **Complete the sentences in the simple present. Use a verb from the list and the adverb (in parentheses).**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| do | drink (x2) | ~~eat~~ | finish | get |
| go | have | speak | take (x2) | watch |

He *never eats* meat for lunch. (never)

1 Alex _____ _____ to bed very late. (sometimes)

2 We _____ housework on the weekend. (always)

3 Do you _____ _____ lunch at home on the weekend? (usually)

4 I _____ _____ a bath, I _____ _____ a shower. (never, always)

5 My sister _____ _____ up early. (always)

6 I _____ _____ English at work. (never)

7 We _____ _____ TV after dinner. (sometimes)

8 They _____ _____ coffee in the evening. (never)

9 Does your husband _____ _____ work at 7:30 p.m.? (usually)

10 We _____ _____ tea with milk, but I prefer it with lemon. (sometimes)

p.38

## 7A word order in questions: *be* and simple present

**7.5** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| Questions with *be* | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ? | Verb | Subject | |
| | Are | you | tired? |
| | Are | you | a student? |
| | Is | this | your coat? |
| | Is | the store | near here? |
| How old | are | you? | |
| Where | are | you | from? |
| What time | is | it? | |
| Why | are | you | late? |
| Who | are | you? | |

- Word order
  - + Subject Verb — *They're American.*
  - ? Verb Subject — *Are they American?*
  - *Where are they from?*

**7.6** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| Questions with other verbs | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ? | Auxiliary | Subject | Base form (= verb) |
| | Do | you | go out on Friday nights? |
| Where | do | you | go? |
| What | does | your sister | do? |
| What music | do | you | like? |
| When | does | Jane | go to the gym? |
| How | do | you | spell your name? |
| Who | does | she | live with? |

- Word order = Auxiliary, subject, base form
  *Do you go out on Friday night?*
- Word order = Question word, auxiliary, subject, base form
  *Where do you go?*

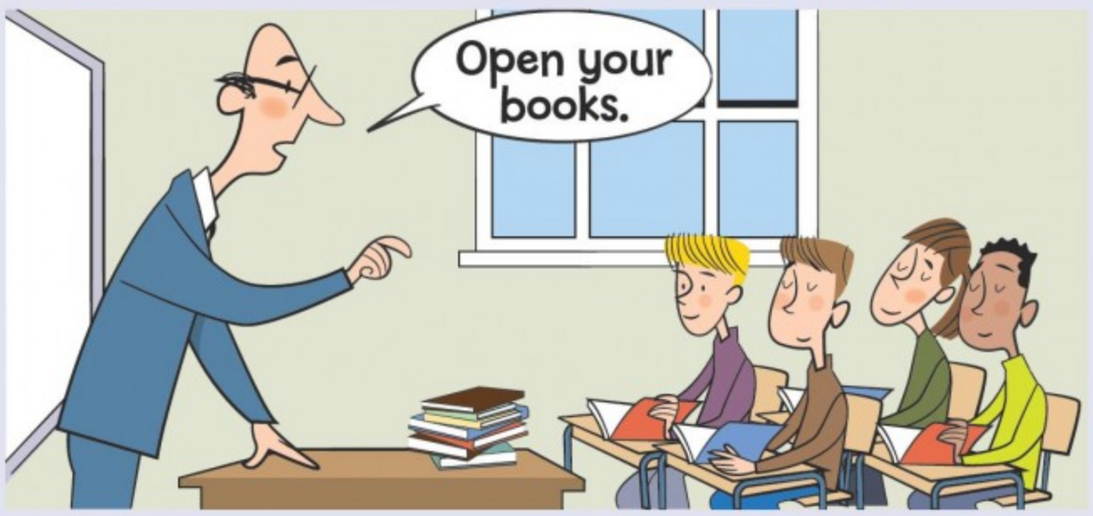
## 7B imperatives, object pronouns: *me, him,* etc.

**7.11** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| | Imperatives |
|---|---|
| + | Come here! Sit down. Open your books. |
| − | Don't talk. Don't worry. Don't be late. |

- We use imperatives to give orders or instructions.
- Imperatives are the same for singular and plural.




**7.12** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rule.

| Subject pronoun | Object pronoun |
|---|---|
| **I**'m your teacher. | Listen to **me**! |
| **You**'re beautiful. | I love **you**. |
| **He** goes to my gym. | I see **him** every week. |
| **She** never listens. | Don't talk to **her**. |
| **It**'s a nice coat! | I want **it** for my birthday. |
| **We** aren't friends. | They don't speak to **us**. |
| **They**'re good books. | I want to read **them**. |

- We use object pronouns (*me*, *him*, etc.) as the object of a verb or after prepositions.

## 7A

**a** Complete the sentences with a question word from the list.

How (x2) What (x2) ~~What time~~
When Where (x2) Who

**A** What time do you go to bed?
**B** At about eleven o'clock.

1 **A** _____ music does she like?
**B** Jazz and pop.

2 **A** _____ old is your sister?
**B** She's 19.

3 **A** _____ do you want for lunch?
**B** A sandwich and a coffee, please.

4 **A** _____'s that woman with Bob?
**B** His sister.

5 **A** _____ do you have English classes?
**B** On Thursdays.

6 **A** _____ do you spell your last name?
**B** D-A-V-I-S.

7 **A** _____ does your wife work?
**B** In an office.

8 **A** _____ do you usually go on vacation?
**B** We usually go to the beach.

**b** Order the words to make questions.

live you do where? Where do you live ?

1 your where work do brothers? _____
2 your is this phone? _____
3 movie the what start does time? _____
4 Spanish does speak husband your? _____
5 is how family your? _____
6 we late are for class? _____
7 children sushi do your like? _____
8 your finish what does time work wife? _____
9 you are tired why? _____
10 play with you do who tennis? _____

**c** Complete the questions with *is*, *are*, *do*, or *does*.

Where does your sister live?

1 _____ soccer your favorite sport?
2 How _____ you relax on weekends?
3 What movies _____ on TV this weekend?
4 _____ you hungry? It's time for lunch.
5 Where _____ you usually have lunch on Sundays?
6 _____ your son play a lot of video games?
7 How old _____ your teacher?
8 What TV shows _____ your husband like?
9 _____ you exercise during the week?

p.43

## 7B

**a** Complete the sentences with an ⊞ or ⊟ imperative of a verb from the list.

close eat go ~~listen~~ make play
open read sit speak worry

Don't listen to Jim. He always says silly things.

1 It's very cold in here. _____ the window, please.
2 _____ those eggs! I want to make an omelet.
3 _____ the piano! The baby's in bed!
4 _____ slowly, please. I don't understand you.
5 You're very tired. _____ to bed.
6 _____ pasta for lunch! I don't like it.
7 _____ down and _____ your books to page 43.
8 _____ my emails! They're private.
9 _____! It isn't a big problem.

**b** Complete the sentences with an object pronoun.

She's a great singer. I really like her .

1 I have an old bike, but I don't use _____ very much.
2 Jim likes Sarah, but she doesn't like _____.
3 My children love music. I sing to _____ every night.
4 **A** Is Emma nice?
**B** I don't know _____ very well.
5 These are my new shoes. Do you like _____?
6 I'm hungry. Can you make _____ a sandwich, please?
7 Our children usually have lunch with _____ on weekends.
8 I don't have my car today. Can I go to the concert with _____?

p.44

## 8A *can / can't*

**8.5** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| ***can / can't*: permission and possibility** | |
|---|---|
| + | − |
| **I can** park here.<br>**You can** sit here.<br>**He can** help us.<br>**We can** have lunch outside.<br>**They can** come to dinner tonight. | **I can't** park there. (*can't = cannot*)<br>**You can't** sit there.<br>**He can't** help us.<br>**We can't** have lunch outside.<br>**They can't** come to dinner tonight. |

| ? | ✓ | ✗ |
|---|---|---|
| **Can I** park here? | Yes, **you can**. | No, **you can't**. |
| **Can he** help us? | Yes, **he can**. | No, **he can't**. |
| **Can they** come to dinner tonight? | Yes, **they can**. | No, **they can't**. |

- We use *can / can't* for permission or possibility.
- *can / can't* is the same for all persons: *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, etc.
- ? = *Can I sit here?* **NOT** ~~*Do I can sit here?*~~

***Can you drive?***

We also use *can* to talk about things you know how to do, e.g., *Can you drive? I can't swim. I can play the guitar.*

***you***

*You* can be personal or impersonal.
*Can **you** help me?* = personal (singular or plural)
***You** can't park here.* (= people in general)

## 8B *like / love / hate* + verb + *-ing*

**8.12** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

What **do you like doing** on the weekend?
**I love cooking.**
**I like going for a walk.**
**I don't like studying.**
**I hate getting up** early.

- We use verb + *-ing* after *like*, *love*, *hate*.

| **Spelling rules for *-ing* form** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Base form** | **Verb + *-ing*** | **Spelling** |
| read<br>fly | I like read**ing**.<br>She doesn't like fly**ing**. | + *-ing* |
| ride<br>drive | He loves rid**ing** his bike.<br>I hate driv**ing** at night. | ~~e~~ + *-ing* |
| swim<br>shop | We like swim**ming**.<br>He doesn't like shop**ping**. | one vowel + one consonant<br>= double consonant + *-ing* |




**I hate getting up early.**

## 8A

**a** Write statements or questions with *can* or *can't*.

You / play soccer here

− You can't play soccer here.

1 / we sit here

? _____

2 I / drink this

− _____

3 James / help us tomorrow

+ _____

4 / you come to lunch on Sunday

? _____

5 You / finish work early today

+ _____

6 We / park here

− _____

7 / we watch TV after dinner

? _____

8 He / go to school today

− _____

**b** Complete with *can* or *can't* and a verb from the list.

come drive go listen stay
swim ~~use~~ walk watch

You can't use phones in class.

1 I _____ _____ to work tomorrow. My sister needs the car.

2 **A** _____ I _____ with you?

**B** No, I'm sorry. We only have one bedroom.

3 **A** _____ we _____ here?

**B** No, the water's very cold and dirty.

4 The theater is near here. We _____ _____ there. We don't need a taxi.

5 Where _____ we _____ for lunch? I'm hungry.

6 You _____ _____ TV when you finish your homework.

7 **A** _____ you _____ to dinner at my house on Saturday?

**B** I'm sorry, I can't. It's my mother's birthday.

8 **A** Excuse me. You _____ _____ to music in the museum.

**B** Sorry!

p.49

## 8B

**a** Write the *-ing* form of the verbs.

swim swimming

1 meet _____
2 stop _____
3 buy _____
4 go _____
5 cry _____
6 write _____
7 run _____
8 ride _____
9 get _____
10 drive _____
11 sit _____
12 use _____
13 put _____
14 hear _____
15 finish _____

**b** Write statements or questions. Use the correct form of *like* or *love*, and the *-ing* form of the **bold** verb.

I / like / **go** / to bed late

− I don't like going to bed late.

1 She / like / **cook**

+ _____

2 you / like / **travel**

? _____

3 I / love / **shop** / for presents

+ _____

4 They / like / **watch** / TV

− _____

5 your father / like / **play** / chess

? _____

6 George / like / **exercise**

− _____

7 My mother / love / **read** / detective novels

+ _____

8 We / like / **fly**

− _____

p.50

## 9A present continuous

**9.2** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

**Present continuous + and −**

| + | − |
|---|---|
| **I'm working**. | **I'm not working**. |
| **You're sitting** in my chair. | **You aren't sitting** in my chair. |
| **He's playing** soccer. | **He isn't playing** soccer. |
| **She's taking** a shower. | **She isn't taking** a shower. |
| **It's raining**. | **It isn't raining**. |
| **We're having** dinner. | **We aren't having** dinner. |
| **They're listening** to the teacher. | **They aren't listening** to the teacher. |

**Present continuous ?, ✓, and ✗**

| Question | *be* | Subject | Verb + *-ing* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Are** | **you** | **working** now? | Yes, **I am**. / No, **I'm not**. |
| | **Is** | **she** | **taking** a shower? | Yes, **she is**. / No, **she isn't**. |
| | **Are** | **they** | **listening** to the teacher? | Yes, **they are**. / No, **they aren't**. |
| **Where** | **are** | **you** | **going**? | To a party. |
| **What** | **'s** | **he** | **doing**? | **He's watching** TV at home. |

- We use *be* + verb + *-ing* to talk about things that are happening now / at the moment. *I can't talk now. I'm driving.* **NOT** ~~*I drive*~~.
- See **8B** *p.106* for the spelling rules for the *-ing* form.

**Word order**

+ Subject, *be*, verb + *-ing*: *You are **working** today.*

? *be*, subject, verb + *-ing*: *Are you **working** today?*

? Question word, *be*, subject, verb + *-ing*: *Where are you **working** today?*

## 9B present continuous or simple present?

**9.11** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

1 I **work** in an office. I usually **wear** a suit.
2 Today, I**'m working** at home. I**'m wearing** jeans.

1 We use the simple present for things we usually do.
We often use the simple present with *always*, *usually*, *sometimes*, *never*, e.g.,
*I sometimes have lunch in my office. I never get up early on Saturday.*

2 We use the present continuous for things happening now / at the moment / today.
*Jane's in the kitchen. She's cooking.*
**A** *What are you doing here?*
**B** *I'm waiting for a friend.*

## 9A

**a** Write sentences in the present continuous for each picture. Use contractions.



He 's taking a shower. (take)



1 I can't talk now. I _____. (drive)



2 You _____ the wrong exercise! (do)



3 She _____ from home today. (work)



4 He _____ soccer. (play)



5 We _____ for an exam. (study)



6 They _____ in the river. (swim)

**b** Complete the sentences with the verb (in parentheses) in the present continuous [+], [–], or [?]. Use contractions where possible.

She 's eating pasta. (eat)

1 **A** Excuse me! You _____ in my seat. (sit)
**B** Sorry!

2 **A** Dad _____ this TV show. He _____. (not watch, sleep)
**B** OK. You can watch your show then.

3 **A** Hello! What _____ you _____ here? (do)
**B** I _____. It's Jim's birthday tomorrow. (shop)

4 **A** I _____ to the gym now. Do you want to come with me? (go)
**B** Great idea. I _____ today! (not work)

5 **A** _____ Alice _____ her homework? (do)
**B** No, she isn't. She _____ video games. (play)

6 **A** Do you want my newspaper? I _____ it. (not read)
**B** No, thanks. I _____ a movie on my laptop. (watch)

7 **A** Is that your brother?
**B** No, my brother's over there. He _____ to his friends. (talk)

8 **A** _____ you _____ a good time in Rio? (have)
**B** Yes, we are. We _____ a great time! (have)

9 **A** Hello, can I speak to Marisa?
**B** Sorry, she _____ to her mother on video. Who is it? (talk)
**A** It's Yuko, from English class. I _____ about tonight's homework. (call)

10 **A** _____ you _____ up now? You're late for school! (get)
**B** Yes, I am. What time is it?

p.54

## 9B

**a** Circle the correct form.

Hiro usually *goes* / *is going* to school in the morning, but today he *studies* / *'s studying* at home.

1 **A** Hi, Sue. Where are you? In the office?
**B** No. *I work* / *I'm working* from home today.

2 **A** *Do you do* / *Are you doing* your homework?
**B** I don't have any homework today. *I play* / *I'm playing* a video game.

3 My wife is a nurse. *She works* / *She's working* in a children's hospital.

4 We're on vacation in Brazil. *We stay* / *We're staying* in a nice little hotel.

5 **A** Hi. Can you talk or *are you driving* / *do you drive*?
**B** *I don't drive* / *I'm not driving*, but I can't talk now. *I have* / *I'm having* lunch with my boss.

6 It always *rains* / *is raining* a lot here in the winter.

7 I usually *have* / *am having* toast for breakfast, but today *I have* / *I'm having* cereal.

**b** Complete the sentences with the verb (in parentheses). Use the simple present or present continuous.

Do you usually walk to work? (walk)

1 Oh no! It _____ and I don't have my umbrella. (rain)

2 My father and I _____ dinner together every week. (have)

3 Maya and Jack are on vacation this week. They _____ in the mountains. (camp)

4 **A** Hi, Sam. _____ you _____ the basketball game on TV? (watch)
**B** No, I _____ my Spanish homework. (do)

5 I always _____ late, and I never _____ time for breakfast. (get up, have)

6 My sister _____ in Thailand right now. (travel)

7 **A** What time _____ you usually _____ to bed? (go)
**B** At about 11:30.

8 Look. That's my brother over there. Can you see him? He _____ a blue jacket. (wear)

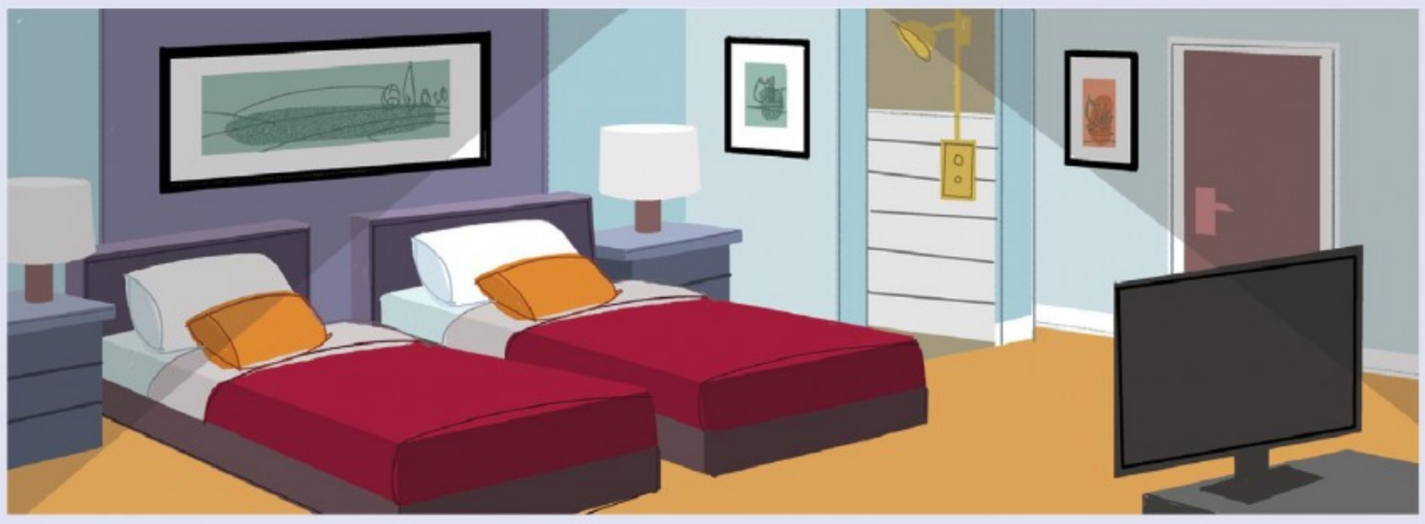
9 **A** Hello, Nick. Where _____ you _____? (go)
**B** To the gym. I always _____ on Tuesdays. (go)

p.56

## 10A *there's a... / there are some...*

**10.5** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| | Singular | Plural |
|---|---|---|
| + | **There's** a TV in the room. (*there's = there is*)<br>**There's** a shower. | **There are** two beds in the room.<br>**There are some** pictures. |
| − | **There isn't** a phone.<br>**There isn't** a bathtub. | **There aren't any** towels.<br>**There aren't any** books. |
| ? | **Is there** a TV?<br>Yes, **there is**. | **Are there any** pictures?<br>Yes, **there are**. |
| ? | **Is there** a bathtub?<br>No, **there isn't**. | **Are there any** towels?<br>No, **there aren't**. |



- We use *there is / there are* to say that something or somebody is in a place.
  *There's a TV in my hotel room. = The room has a TV.*

**Word order**

***There's*** *a swimming pool.*

***Is there*** *a swimming pool?*

***some* and *any***

*There are **some** towels in the bathroom.*
*There aren't **any** towels in the bathroom.*
*Are there **any** towels in the bathroom?*

- Use *some* with plural nouns in + statements.
  *some* = you don't say exactly how many
- Use *any* with plural nouns in − statements and ?.

## 10B simple past: *be*

**10.11** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| + | − |
|---|---|
| **I was** at home at eight o'clock. | **I wasn't** at home at eight o'clock. (*wasn't = was not*) |
| **You were** in class yesterday. | **You weren't** in class yesterday. (*weren't = were not*) |
| **He was** tired last night. | **He wasn't** tired last night. |
| **It was** hot last week. | **It wasn't** hot last week. |
| **We were** in Seoul last month. | **We weren't** in Seoul last month. |
| **You were** late this morning. | **You weren't** late this morning. |
| **They were** famous in the 60s. | **They weren't** famous in the 60s. |

| ? | + | − |
|---|---|---|
| **Were you** late? | Yes, **I was**. | No, **I wasn't**. |
| **Was she** a singer? | Yes, **she was**. | No, **she wasn't**. |
| **Were they** in Mexico last week? | Yes, **they were**. | No, **they weren't**. |

- We use *was / were* to talk about the past.
- Present to past:
  *am / is* → *was*, *are* → *were*
  *He is at home today.*
  *He was at home yesterday.*
- The past of *there is = there was*, and the past of *there are = there were*.
  *There was a party at the school last night.*

**Past time expressions**

You can use the simple past with these time expressions:
***this morning***, ***yesterday***, ***last night***, ***last week***, ***last month***, ***last year***

*He was late for work this morning.*
*She wasn't in class last week.*



**I was a teacher.**

## 10A

**a** Complete with *there's / there are*, *Is there / Are there*, or *there isn't / there aren't*.

There aren't any pictures on the walls.

1 _____ any free tables in the restaurant?

2 _____ any elevators. Would you like rooms on the first floor?

3 _____ a bathtub in the bathroom. It's very big.

4 _____ a gym? I want to exercise.

5 _____ a remote control for the TV. Can you ask reception for one?

6 _____ some very ugly pictures in this room.

7 _____ a meeting room in the hotel?

8 _____ some tables in the yard if you want to eat outside.

9 _____ a parking lot, but we can help you park your car.

10 _____ any clean towels?

**b** Complete with *a*, *some*, or *any*.

Are there any rooms in the hotel?

1 There aren't _____ cars in the parking lot.

2 There are _____ pillows in the closet.

3 There's _____ sauna in the spa.

4 Are there _____ chairs in the yard?

5 Is there _____ TV in the spa?

6 There isn't _____ table in the bedroom.

7 There aren't _____ windows in my room.

8 There are _____ stores in the hotel.

9 There are _____ nice T-shirts in the gift shop.

10 Are there _____ restaurants in town?

p.61

## 10B

**a** Write statements or questions with *was* and *were*.

We −

We weren't at home last night.

1 you ?

_____ at school yesterday?

2 Jake −

_____ very well yesterday.

3 We +

_____ on the plane at 4:00.

4 they ?

_____ in class yesterday?

5 You −

_____ very hungry this morning.

6 I +

_____ in a meeting until 7:00 last night.

7 your sister ?

_____ in Toronto last week?

8 It +

_____ a terrible movie.

9 I −

_____ at home last weekend.

10 Sarah and Emma +

_____ tired this morning.

**b** Complete the conversations with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

1 **A** Where were you last night?

**B** I _____ at work all evening.

**A** No, you _____. You _____ with Elena!

**B** No, I _____!

2 **A** _____ Freddie Mercury an actor?

**B** No, he _____. He _____ the lead singer of Queen.

3 **A** _____ you in Dallas yesterday?

**B** No, we _____. We _____ in Austin.

4 **A** _____ the movie good?

**B** No, it _____. It _____ very slow!

p.62

## 11A simple past: regular verbs

**11.3** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| + | − |
|---|---|
| **I arrived** at the airport at 7:00. | **I didn't arrive** at the airport at 7:00. |
| **You finished** the book. | **You didn't finish** the book. |
| **He wanted** a coffee. | **He didn't want** a coffee. |
| **She liked** the movie. | **She didn't like** the movie. |
| **It rained** yesterday. | **It didn't rain** yesterday. |
| **We studied** Spanish at school. | **We didn't study** Spanish at school. |
| **They stopped** at a café. | **They didn't stop** at a café. |

| ? | ✓ | ✗ |
|---|---|---|
| **Did you watch TV** yesterday? | Yes, **I did**. | No, **I didn't**. |
| **Did she walk** to work? | Yes, **she did**. | No, **she didn't**. |
| **Did they play** tennis? | Yes, **they did**. | No, **they didn't**. |

- We use the simple past to talk about the past.
- The simple past is the same for all persons, e.g., *I arrived*, *he arrived*, *they arrived*, etc.
- We use *did* (not *do / does*) to make questions and negatives in the simple past.
- − = *I didn't arrive at the airport.* **NOT** ~~*I didn't arrived.*~~
- ? = *Did you watch TV...?* **NOT** ~~*Did you watched...?*~~

| Spelling rules for regular verbs | | |
|---|---|---|
| work<br>finish | work**ed**<br>finish**ed** | verb + *-ed* |
| live<br>change | live**d**<br>change**d** | verb ending in *e* + *-d* |
| cry<br>study | cr**ied**<br>stud**ied** | verbs with final consonant + *y* = ~~*y*~~ + *-ied* |
| stop<br>prefer | stop**ped**<br>prefer**red** | verbs that end consonant–vowel–consonant = double final consonant + *-ed* |

## 11B simple past irregular verbs: *get*, *go*, *have*, *do*

**11.11** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| + | − |
|---|---|
| **I got up** late yesterday. | **I didn't get up** late yesterday. |
| **He went** to work by car. | **He didn't go** to work by car. |
| **She had** eggs for breakfast. | **She didn't have** eggs for breakfast. |
| **We did** yoga yesterday. | **We didn't do** yoga yesterday. |
| **They did** their homework last night. | **They didn't do** their homework last night. |

| ? | ✓ | ✗ |
|---|---|---|
| **Did you get up** late yesterday? | Yes, **I did**. | No, **I didn't**. |
| **Did he go** to work by car yesterday? | Yes, **he did**. | No, **he didn't**. |
| **Did they do** their homework last night? | Yes, **they did**. | No, **they didn't**. |

| ? | ✓ |
|---|---|
| **What time did you get** up? | At eight o'clock. |
| **Where did you go** on Saturday? | We **went** to the beach. |
| **Where did you have** lunch? | At school. |
| **What did you do** last night? | We **had** dinner with friends. |

- *get*, *go*, *have*, and *do* are irregular verbs in the past tense.
- **Present to past**

  +

  *I **get** up early. → I **got** up early.*
  *I **go** to school. → I **went** to school.*
  *I **have** breakfast. → I **had** breakfast.*
  *I **do** my homework. → I **did** my homework.*

  −

  *I **don't get** up early. → I **didn't get** up early.*
  *I **don't go** to school. → I **didn't go** to school.*
  **NOT** ~~*I didn't got up early. / I didn't went to school. etc.*~~

  ?

  ***Do** you **have** breakfast? → **Did** you **have** breakfast?*
  ***Do** you **do** your homework? → **Did** you **do** your homework?*
  **NOT** ~~*Did you had breakfast? / Did you did your homework?*~~ etc.

- Remember word order in questions:

  Auxiliary, subject, base form:
  *Did you get up early?*

  Question word, auxiliary, subject, base form:
  *What time did you get up?*

### *did / didn't*

We use *did / didn't* to make questions and negatives in the past, e.g.,
***Did** you go to class?*
*I **didn't** have breakfast this morning.*
Here, *did / didn't* = an auxiliary verb.
But *did* can also be a normal verb, e.g.,
*I **did** my homework on the weekend.*

## 11A

**a** Write the sentences in the simple past.

He watches a lot of TV. — He watched a lot of TV.

1 They work in a bank. _____

2 He finishes work late. _____

3 We live in Brazil. _____

4 I carry a big bag. _____

5 She walks to work. _____

6 The train stops in Chicago. _____

7 We play tennis. _____

8 You talk a lot! _____

9 I relax on the weekend. _____

10 He waits for the bus. _____

11 They prefer the red car. _____

12 She needs a new coat. _____

**b** Complete the conversations with the verb (in parentheses) in the simple past ⊞, ⊟, or ?.

(play) **A** Did you play soccer last weekend?
**B** Yes, I played on Saturday.

1 (park) **A** Where _____ you _____ the car?
**B** I _____ it near the restaurant.

2 (finish) **A** _____ you _____ your homework?
**B** No, I _____ it. It was very difficult.

3 (study) **A** What _____ you _____ in college?
**B** I _____ economics.

4 (like) **A** _____ you _____ the concert?
**B** No, I _____ it very much. The singers were terrible.

5 (watch) **A** _____ you _____ TV last night?
**B** Yes, we _____ a very good show.

6 (close) **A** _____ you _____ the door when you went out?
**B** Of course I _____ it!

7 (cry) **A** _____ you _____ at the end of the movie?
**B** Yes, I _____ a lot!

8 (arrive) **A** What time _____ you _____ in Tokyo?
**B** We _____ very late, about 1:00 a.m.

p.66

## 11B

**a** Change from present to past.

I don't go the gym.
I didn't go to the gym yesterday.

1 I have eggs for breakfast.
_____ this morning.

2 Does she go to Spanish classes?
_____ last year?

3 We don't have lunch at home.
_____ last week.

4 Mike doesn't go to work by car.
_____ yesterday.

5 They go to school by bus.
_____ yesterday.

6 What time do you get up?
_____ this morning?

7 Do you do yoga?
_____ last weekend?

8 You don't do the housework.
_____ yesterday.

9 I don't get up early.
_____ this morning.

**b** Complete with the verb (in parentheses) in the simple past ⊞, ⊟, or ?.

(go) **A** Did you go to bed early last night?
**B** Yes, I did. I went to bed at 9:30!

1 (have) **A** What _____ you _____ for lunch today?
**B** I _____ fish.

2 (do) **A** _____ you _____ the housework?
**B** No, but I _____ my English homework.

3 (go) **A** Where _____ you _____ last night?
**B** I _____ _____ out. I stayed at home.

4 (get up) **A** What time _____ the children _____?
**B** They _____ very late. They were tired.

5 (have) **A** What _____ you _____ for breakfast?
**B** I _____ _____ breakfast. I wasn't hungry. I just _____ a coffee.

6 (go) **A** _____ Pedro _____ to judo last week?
**B** He _____ on Monday, but he _____ on Wednesday because he was sick.

p.68

## 12A simple past: regular and irregular verbs

**12.6** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| *be* | |
|---|---|
| I **was** at home last night.<br>You **were** very late.<br>He **was** a teacher.<br>She **was** in bed at 10:00.<br>It **was** cold yesterday.<br>You **were** tired last night.<br>We **were** in Spain in May.<br>They **were** nice rooms. | I **wasn't** at home last night.<br>You **weren't** very late.<br>He **wasn't** a teacher.<br>She **wasn't** in bed at 10:00.<br>It **wasn't** cold yesterday.<br>You **weren't** tired last night.<br>We **weren't** in Spain in May.<br>They **weren't** nice rooms. |
| **Was she** tired?<br>**Were they** at school?<br>Where **were you** at 8:00 this morning? | Yes, **she was**.<br>No, **they weren't**.<br>**I was** on the bus. |

- *was / were* is the past of *am / is / are*.
- To make questions change the order:

  *She was at home.*

  *Was she at home?*

**12.7** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| **Regular verbs** | |
|---|---|
| I **played** tennis yesterday.<br>They **worked** all weekend. | I **didn't play** tennis yesterday.<br>They **didn't work** all weekend. |
| **Did you like** the movie?<br>Where **did they stay** in New York? | Yes, **I did**. / No, **I didn't**.<br>They **stayed** in a hotel on Fifth Avenue. |

- For regular verbs, add *-ed* or *-d* to the base form to make the simple past.

**12.8** Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

| **Irregular verbs** | |
|---|---|
| I **got up** late yesterday.<br>They **had** lunch at a restaurant. | I **didn't get up** late yesterday.<br>They **didn't have** lunch at a restaurant. |
| **Did you go** on vacation last summer?<br>Where **did you go** on vacation? | Yes, **I did**. / No, **I didn't**.<br>We **went** to Brazil. |

- Some verbs are irregular in the simple past, e.g., *go* → *went*.
- To make negatives of regular and irregular verbs, we use *didn't* + the base form, e.g., *I didn't like the movie. They didn't go to class.*
- To make questions with regular and irregular verbs, we use *Did* + subject + the base form, e.g., *Did you like the movie? Did they go to class?*
- Remember word order in questions:
  Auxiliary, subject, base form: *Did she want to come?*
  Question word, auxiliary, subject, base form: *What time did they get up?*
- There is a list of regular and irregular verbs on *p.133*.

## 12A

Complete the story with the verbs (in parentheses) in the simple past ⊞, ⊟, or ?.





Last summer my family and I went (go) to California for a vacation. We [1]_____ (rent) a house near Santa Cruz, on the coast of California, about 75 miles from San Francisco. The weather [2]_____ (be) fantastic, hot and sunny during the day, but cold at night. We [3]_____ (do) different things every day. Sometimes we [4]_____ (go) to Aptos or Capitola and [5]_____ (visit) parks and art galleries. On other days, we [6]_____ (stay) in the house. It [7]_____ (have) a swimming pool in the yard, so the children [8]_____ (be) happy.

One afternoon, an old woman [9]_____ (arrive) at the door.

"Good afternoon," she [10]_____ (say). "I'm your neighbor. Are your children at home?"

"Yes," I [11]_____ (answer). "I think so. Why?"

"Because about an hour ago, I [12]_____ (see) a small boy near the town. I think he was your son."

I [13]_____ (look) out of the window. My daughter [14]_____ (be) in the swimming pool, but my son [15]_____ (not be) there.

"Where [16]_____ you _____ (see) him?" I [17]_____ (ask).
"[18]_____ you _____ (talk) to him?"

"He was on the road to town, but I [19]_____ (not speak) to him," the old woman [20]_____ (say).

"Come on," I [21]_____ (tell) my husband. "We need to go to town."

The old woman [22]_____ (wait) at the house with my daughter and we [23]_____ (go) to town.

My son [24]_____ (be) outside a café. He [25]_____ (have) a big ice-cream cone in his hand.

"Why [26]_____ you _____ (leave) the house?" I asked him. "We [27]_____ (be) really worried."

"I [28]_____ (want) an ice-cream cone," he said.

p.73

# Numbers

Vocabulary Bank

## 1 0–10

**a** **1.6** Listen and repeat the numbers.

0 zero /ˈzɪroʊ/
(also “oh” /oʊ/ in phone numbers)
1 one /wʌn/
2 two /tu/
3 three /θri/
4 four /fɔr/
5 five /faɪv/
6 six /sɪks/
7 seven /ˈsɛvn/
8 eight /eɪt/
9 nine /naɪn/
10 ten /tɛn/

**Word stress**
0 = **ze**ro 7 = **se**ven

**b** Cover the words. Say the numbers.

**ACTIVATION** Count from 0–10 and from 10–0.

p.7




## 2 11–100

**a** **2.20** Listen and repeat the numbers.

11 eleven /ɪˈlɛvn/
12 twelve /twɛlv/
13 thirteen /ˌθərˈtin/
14 fourteen /ˌfɔrˈtin/
15 fifteen /ˌfɪfˈtin/
16 sixteen /ˌsɪksˈtin/
17 seventeen /ˌsɛvnˈtin/
18 eighteen /ˌeɪˈtin/
19 nineteen /ˌnaɪnˈtin/
20 twenty /ˈtwɛnti/

**b** **2.21** Listen and repeat the numbers.

21 twenty-one /ˌtwɛnti ˈwʌn/
22 twenty-two /ˌtwɛnti ˈtu/
30 thirty /ˈθərti/
33 thirty-three /ˌθərti ˈθri/
40 forty /ˈfɔrti/
44 forty-four /ˌfɔrti ˈfɔr/
50 fifty /ˈfɪfti/
55 fifty-five /ˌfɪfti ˈfaɪv/
60 sixty /ˈsɪksti/
66 sixty-six /ˌsɪksti ˈsɪks/
70 seventy /ˈsɛvnti/
77 seventy-seven /ˌsɛvnti ˈsɛvn/
80 eighty /ˈeɪti/
88 eighty-eight /ˌeɪti ˈeɪt/
90 ninety /ˈnaɪnti/
99 ninety-nine /ˌnaɪnti ˈnaɪn/
100 a / one hundred /ə ˈhʌndrəd/ /wʌn ˈhʌndrəd/

**Word stress – be careful!**
30 **thir**ty 13 thir**teen** 40 **for**ty 14 four**teen**, etc.

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Say the numbers.

p.15

# Countries and nationalities

## 1 Countries

**a** 1.15 Listen and repeat the countries.







1 Argentina /ˌɑrdʒən'tinə/
2 Brazil /brə'zɪl/
3 Canada /'kænədə/
4 Chile /'tʃɪleɪ/
5 China /'tʃaɪnə/
6 Egypt /'idʒɪpt/
7 England /'ɪŋgləns/
the UK* /ˌyu 'keɪ/
8 France /fræns/
9 Japan /dʒə'pæn/
10 Mexico /'mɛksɪˌkoʊ/
11 Peru /pə'ru/
12 South Korea /ˌsaʊθ kə'riə/
13 Spain /speɪn/
14 Thailand /'taɪlænd/
15 the United States (the US) /yu'naɪtɪd 'steɪts/
16 Vietnam /ˌviɛt'nɑm/

*the UK = England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland

**Capital letters**
Brazil **NOT** ~~brazil~~.

**b** Write your country: _____. Practice saying it.

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the countries. p.8

## 2 Nationalities

**a** 2.1 Listen and repeat the countries and nationalities.

| Country | Nationality |
|---|---|
| Argentina | Argentinian /ˌɑrdʒən'tɪniən/ |
| Brazil | Brazilian /brə'zɪlyən/ |
| Canada | Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/ |
| Chile | Chilean /tʃɪ'leɪən/ |
| China | Chinese /ˌtʃaɪ'niz/ |
| Egypt | Egyptian /ɪ'dʒɪpʃn/ |
| England | English /'ɪŋglɪʃ/ |
| France | French /frɛntʃ/ |
| Japan | Japanese /ˌdʒæpə'niz/ |
| Mexico | Mexican /'mɛksɪkən/ |
| Peru | Peruvian /pə'ruviən/ |
| South Korea | South Korean /ˌsaʊθ kə'riən/ |
| Spain | Spanish /'spænɪʃ/ |
| Thailand | Thai /taɪ/ |
| the United Kingdom / the UK | British /'brɪtɪʃ/ |
| the United States / the US | American /ə'mɛrɪkən/ |
| Vietnam | Vietnamese /ˌviətnə'miz/ |

**Word stress**
For most countries, the word stress is the same on the country and the nationality, e.g., *Brazil*, *Brazilian*.
Sometimes it's different:
*Canada > Canadian* *China > Chinese*
*Egypt > Egyptian* *Japan > Japanese*

**b** Write your nationality: _____. Practice saying it.

**c** Read about countries and languages. What's the language in your country?

**Countries and languages**
The word for a language is sometimes the same as the nationality.
**England**: nationality *English*, language *English*
Some are different, e.g.,
**Brazil**: nationality *Brazilian*, language *Portuguese*
**Egypt**: nationality *Egyptian*, language *Arabic*

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the flags. Say the countries and nationalities. p.12

# The classroom

Vocabulary Bank

## 1 Things in the classroom

**a** **1.34** Listen and repeat the words.

1 a coat /koʊt/
2 the door /dɔr/
3 a window /ˈwɪndoʊ/
4 the board /bɔrd/
5 a chair /tʃɛr/
6 a table /ˈteɪbl/
7 a laptop /ˈlæptɑp/
8 a dictionary /ˈdɪkʃəˌnɛri/
9 a bag /bæg/
10 a piece of paper /pis əv ˈpeɪpər/
11 a pen /pɛn/




**b** Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the things.

**ACTIVATION** In pairs, point to things in the classroom. Your partner says the word.

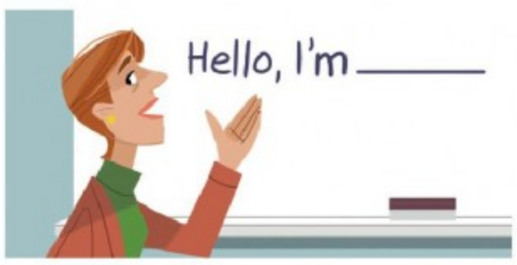
*What is it?* — *It's the board.*

*How do you spell it?* — *B-O-A-R-D.*

## 2 Classroom language

**1.35** Listen and repeat the phrases.

**The teacher says...**




1 Look at the board, please.



2 Open your books.



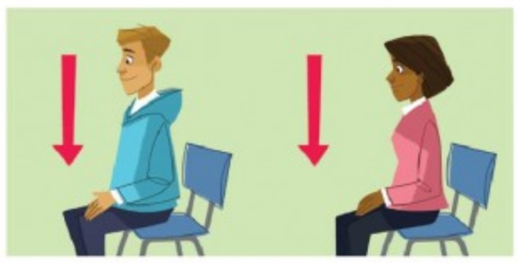

3 Go to page 10.



4 Close your books.



5 Stand up, please.



6 Sit down.

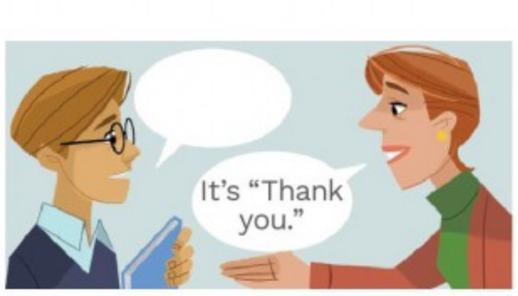
**You say...**




7 How do you spell it?



8 Sorry? Can you repeat that, please?




9 Excuse me. What's *gracias* in English?




10 I don't understand.




11 I don't know.



12 Sorry I'm late.

**ACTIVATION** Cover the phrases. Look at the pictures. Say the phrases.

p.10

# Small things




**3.1** Listen and repeat the words.

1 a (cell) phone /foʊn/
2 a watch /wɑtʃ/
3 a tablet /'tæblət/
4 a bag /bæg/
5 a wallet /'wɑlət/
6 a change purse /tʃeɪndʒ pərs/
7 a pencil /'pɛnsl/
8 a notebook /'noʊtbʊk/
9 glasses /'glæsəz/
10 a photo /'foʊtoʊ/
11 an ID card /aɪ 'di kɑrd/
12 a passport /'pæspɔrt/
13 a camera /'kæmrə/
14 a credit card /'krɛdət kɑrd/
15 a debit card /'dɛbət kɑrd/
16 a (phone) charger /'tʃɑrdʒər/
17 a key /ki/
18 an umbrella /ʌm'brɛlə/

***a / an***

***a*** *bag,* ***a*** *key*

***an*** *ID card,* ***an*** *umbrella*

***ph***

*ph = /f/, e.g.,* ***ph****one,* ***ph****oto*

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the photo. Say the things.

p.18

# People and family

Vocabulary Bank

## 1 People

**a** 4.2 Listen and repeat the words.



1 a boy /bɔɪ/
2 a girl /gərl/
3 a man /mæn/
4 a woman /ˈwʊmən/
5 children /ˈtʃɪldrən/
6 friends /frɛndz/

**b** 4.3 Listen and repeat the irregular plurals.

**Irregular plurals**

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| a child | children |
| a man | men |
| a woman | women |
| a person | people |

**ACTIVATION** Look at the photos in **a**. Say the words in the singular and plural.

*a boy  boys*

## 2 Family

4.4 Listen and repeat the words.



1 husband /ˈhʌzbənd/
2 wife /waɪf/
3 father /ˈfɑðər/
4 mother /ˈmʌðər/
5 son /sʌn/
6 daughter /ˈdɔtər/
7 brother /ˈbrʌðər/
8 sister /ˈsɪstər/
9 grandfather /ˈgræn,fɑðər/
10 grandmother /ˈgræn,mʌðər/
11 boyfriend /ˈbɔɪfrɛnd/
12 girlfriend /ˈgərlfrɛnd/

**Other family words**

mother + father = parents /ˈpɛrənts/ **NOT** ~~fathers~~
grandmother + grandfather = grandparents /ˈgræn,pɛrənts/
partner = husband, wife, or person you are in a relationship with

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the family members.

p.24



MELAL LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

# Adjectives

## 1 Colors

**4.15** Listen and repeat the words.



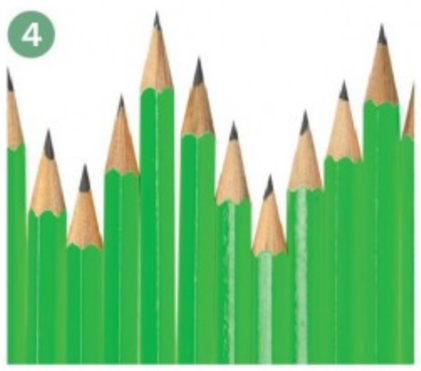
black /blæk/



blue /blu/



brown /braʊn/



green /grin/



gray /greɪ/



orange /ˈɔrɪndʒ/



pink /pɪŋk/



red /rɛd/



white /waɪt/



yellow /ˈyɛloʊ/

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Ask and answer.

*What color is it?* — *It's black.*

*What color are they?* — *They're blue.*

## 2 Common adjectives

**a** **4.16** Listen and repeat the words.



big /bɪg/



small /smɔl/



old /oʊld/



new /nu/



fast /fæst/



slow /sloʊ/



beautiful /ˈbyutəfl/



ugly /ˈʌgli/



cheap /tʃip/



expensive /ɪkˈspɛnsɪv/



long /lɔŋ/



short /ʃɔrt/



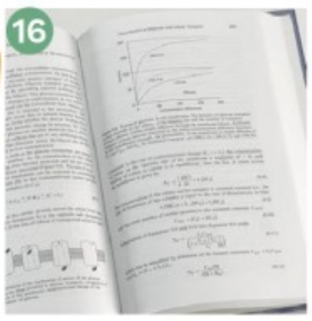
clean /klin/



dirty /ˈdərti/



easy /ˈizi/



difficult /ˈdɪfɪkʌlt/

**b** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the adjectives.

**ACTIVATION** Test a partner.

*What's the opposite of new?*

*Old. What's the opposite of _____?*

**c** **4.17** Listen and repeat the positive and negative adjectives.

### Positive and negative adjectives

✓ = good ✓✓ = very good ✓✓✓ = great / fantastic
✗ = bad ✗✗ = very bad ✗✗✗ = awful / terrible

***very***

You can use ***very*** before most adjectives, e.g.,
*A Ferrari is **very** expensive. It's a **very** fast car.*

p.26

# Food and drink

Vocabulary Bank

**a** **5.2** Listen and repeat the words.

**Food**



1 fish /fɪʃ/



2 meat /mit/



3 pasta /ˈpɑstə/



4 rice /raɪs/



5 eggs /ɛgz/



6 yogurt /ˈyoʊgərt/



7 vegetables /ˈvɛdʒtəblz/



8 potatoes /pəˈteɪtoʊz/



9 salad /ˈsæləd/



10 fruit /frut/



11 bread /brɛd/



12 butter /ˈbʌtər/



13 cheese /tʃiz/



14 sugar /ˈʃʊgər/



15 a sandwich /ˈsæn(d)wɪtʃ/



16 cereal /ˈsɪriəl/



17 chocolate /ˈtʃɑklət/

**Drinks**



18 coffee /ˈkɑfi/



19 tea /ti/



20 milk /mɪlk/



21 water /ˈwɔtər/



22 orange juice /ˈɔrɪndʒ dʒus/

**b** **5.3** Listen and repeat the words and sentences in the box.

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words in **a**. Look at the photos. Say the words.

p.30

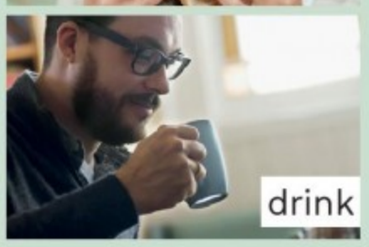
**Meals**

breakfast (in the morning)
lunch (in the afternoon)
dinner (in the evening)

**Verbs: *have, eat, drink***

*I **have** breakfast at 8:00.*
*I **have** cereal and coffee.*
*I **eat** a lot of fruit.*
*I **drink** tea with milk.*



# Common verb phrases 1

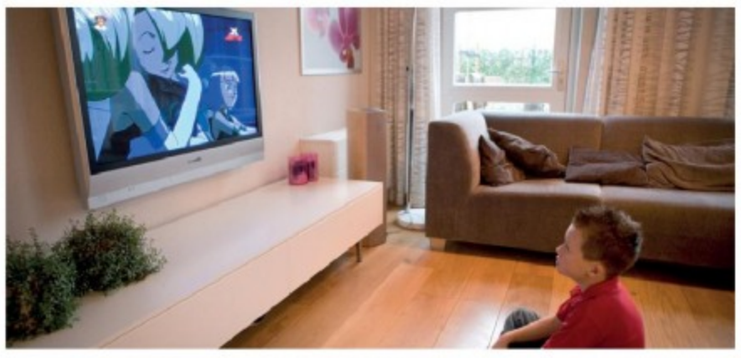
**a** **5.12** Listen and repeat the phrases.



1 **live** in an apartment
/lɪv ɪn ən ə'pɑrtmənt/



2 **have** breakfast (lunch / dinner)
/hæv 'brɛkfəst/ (lʌntʃ / 'dɪnər)



3 **watch** TV /wɑtʃ ti 'vi/



4 **listen** to the radio
/'lɪsn tə ðə 'reɪdiˌoʊ/



5 **read** the newspaper
/rid ðə 'nuzˌpeɪpər/



6 **eat** fast food /it fæst fud/



7 **drink** tea /drɪŋk ti/




8 **speak** English /spik 'ɪŋglɪʃ/



9 **want** a coffee /wɑnt ə 'kɑfi/



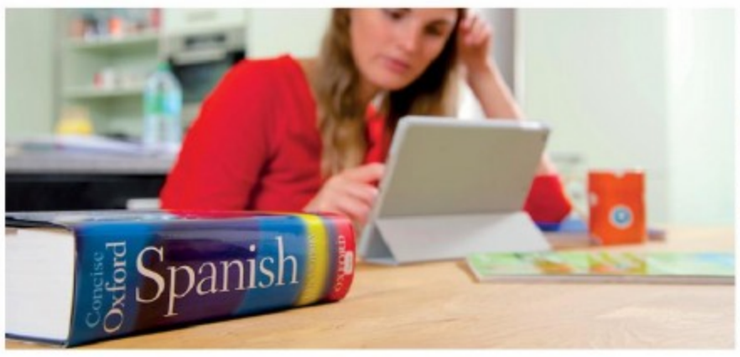
10 **have** a dog /hæv ə dɔg/



11 **like** cats /laɪk kæts/



12 **work** in a bank /wərk ɪn ə bæŋk/




13 **study** Spanish /'stʌdi 'spænɪʃ/



14 **go** to English classes
/goʊ tə 'ɪŋglɪʃ 'klæsɪz/



15 **need** a new car /nid ə nu kɑr/

**b** **5.13** Cover the phrases. Listen and say the phrase.

1 in an apartment *live in an apartment*

**ACTIVATION** Ask and answer with a partner in a different order.

*Do you drink tea?* *Yes, I do.* *No, I don't.*

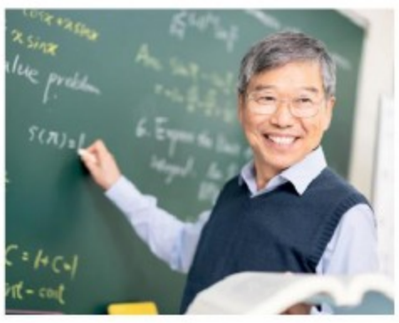
p.33

# Jobs and places of work

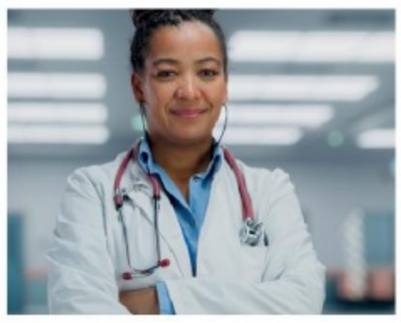
Vocabulary Bank

## 1 What do they do?

**a** 6.2 Listen and repeat the words.



1 a teacher /ˈtitʃər/



2 a doctor /ˈdɑktər/



3 a nurse /nərs/



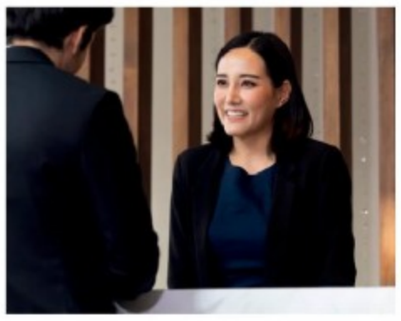
4 a journalist /ˈdʒərnəlɪst/



5 a server /ˈsərvər/



6 a salesperson /ˈseɪlzpərsn/



7 a receptionist /rɪˈsɛpʃənɪst/



8 a police officer /pəˈlis ˈɑfəsər/



9 a factory worker /ˈfæktəri ˈwərkər/



10 a taxi driver /ˈtæksi ˈdraɪvər/



11 a lawyer /ˈlɔyər/



12 a chef /ʃɛf/

**b** Cover the words. Ask and answer in pairs.

*What does he do?* — *He's a teacher.*

*What does she do?* — *She's a...*

**c** 6.3 Listen and repeat the sentences.

I work for an American company. /ˈkʌmpəni/
I'm in college. /ˈkɑlɪdʒ/
I'm a student. /ˈstudnt/
I study economics. /ˌɛkəˈnɑmɪks/
I'm at school. /skul/
I'm unemployed right now. /ˌʌnɪmˈplɔɪd/
I'm retired. /rɪˈtaɪərd/

**d** What do you do?

I _____.

## 2 Where do they work?

**a** 6.4 Listen and repeat the phrases.



1 in a hospital /ˈhɑspɪtl/



2 in a store /stɔr/



3 in a restaurant /ˈrɛstrɑnt/



4 in an office /ˈɔfəs/



5 in a school /skul/



6 in a factory /ˈfæktəri/



7 from home /hoʊm/



8 on the street /strit/

**b** Cover the phrases. Look at the photos. Say the phrases.

**c** Where do you work or study?

I _____.

**ACTIVATION** Ask and answer with a partner.

*Where does a doctor work?*

*In a hospital.*

p.36

# A typical day

**a** 6.13 Listen and repeat the phrases.

## In the morning




get up
/gɛt ʌp/




have breakfast
/hæv 'brɛkfəst/




take a shower
/teɪk ə 'ʃaʊər/




go to work
/goʊ tə wərk/ (by bus, train, car, etc.)




have a coffee
/hæv ə 'kɑfi/

## In the afternoon




have lunch
/hæv lʌntʃ/




finish work
/'fɪnɪʃ wərk/




go home
/goʊ hoʊm/




go shopping
/goʊ 'ʃɑpɪŋ/




go to the gym
/goʊ tə ðə dʒɪm/

## In the evening




make dinner
/meɪk 'dɪnər/



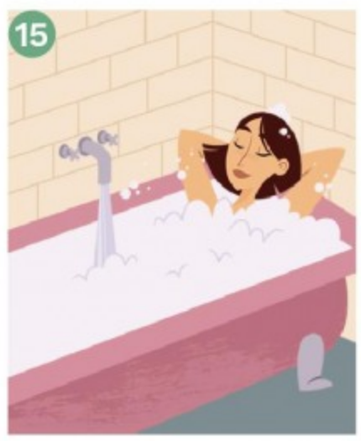

have dinner
/hæv 'dɪnər/



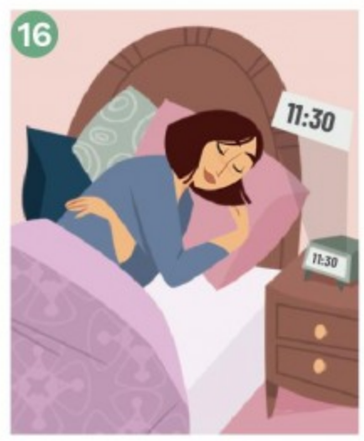

do housework
/du 'haʊswərk/




watch TV
/wɑtʃ ti 'vi/




take a bath
/teɪk ə bæθ/




go to bed
/goʊ tə bɛd/

**b** 6.14 Listen and point to the picture.

*Lisa has lunch at one o'clock.* — *Picture six.*

**ACTIVATION** In pairs, describe Lisa's day. Say the times where there are clocks.

*She gets up at quarter to seven.* — *She has breakfast.*

***make* and *do***

***make*** *dinner / coffee* **BUT** ***do*** *housework,* ***do*** *homework*

***go* with *to* and *the***

*go* ***to the*** *gym, go* ***to the*** *movies*
*go* ***to*** *work, go* ***to*** *school, go* ***to*** *bed*
*go home* **NOT** *go ~~to~~ home*

p.38

# Common verb phrases 2

Vocabulary Bank

## 1 Free time

**a** 7.4 Listen and repeat the verbs and verb phrases.



**go out**
/goʊ aʊt/
(at night)



**play** (video) games
/pleɪ 'vɪdioʊ geɪmz/
(computer games)



**exercise**
/'ɛksər,saɪz/



**go** to the beach
/goʊ tə ðə biʧ/
(the movies, the theater, etc.)



**stay** at home
/steɪ ət hoʊm/



**play** tennis
/pleɪ 'tɛnəs/
(sports)



**go** for a walk
/gəʊ fər ə wɔk/
(in the mountains)



**play** the piano
/pleɪ ðə pi'ænoʊ/



**swim**
/swɪm/



**meet** friends
/mit frɛndz/



**relax**
/rɪ'læks/



**travel**
/'trævl/

***meet***



meet a person for the first time



meet at the train station



meet friends after work

**b** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the verbs or verb phrases.

**ACTIVATION** Work in pairs. Make true sentences with *sometimes* or *never*.

*I sometimes go to the movies.* *I never play video games.*

p.42

## 2 Traveling

9.5 Listen and repeat the verb phrases.



**book** tickets
/bʊk 'tɪkəts/



**pack** a suitcase
/pæk ə 'sutkeɪs/



**leave** the house
/liv ðə haʊs/



**carry** a suitcase
/'kæri ə 'sutkeɪs/



**wear** sunglasses
/wɛr 'sʌn,glæsəz/



**get** a taxi /gɛt ə 'tæksi/
**take** a taxi
/teɪk ə 'tæksi/ (a train, a bus)



**wait** for a flight
/weɪt fər ə flaɪt/




**rent** a car
/rɛnt ə kɑr/



**arrive** at a hotel
/ə'raɪv æt ə hoʊ'tɛl/
(in a city)



**stay** in a hotel
/steɪ ɪn ə hoʊ'tɛl/



**call** home
/kɔl hoʊm/



**buy** presents
/baɪ 'prɛznts/

**ACTIVATION** Cover the verb phrases. Look at the photos. Work in pairs. Ask *What's she doing? What's he doing? What are they doing?*

p.55

# Months and ordinal numbers

## 1 Months

**7.19** Listen and repeat the months.

JAN January /ˈdʒænyuˌɛri/

FEB February /ˈfɛbyuˌɛri/

MAR March /mɑrtʃ/

APR April /ˈeɪprəl/

MAY May /meɪ/

JUN June /dʒun/

JUL July /dʒʊˈlaɪ/

AUG August /ˈɔgəst/

SEP September /sɛpˈtɛmbər/

OCT October /ɑkˈtoʊbər/

NOV November /noʊˈvɛmbər/

DEC December /dɪˈsɛmbər/

**Capital letters**

Months begin with a CAPITAL letter.

*January* **NOT** ~~*january*~~

**ACTIVATION** Cover the months and look at JAN, FEB, etc. Say the months.

p.46

## 2 Ordinal numbers

**a** **7.21** Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers from 1st–20th.

1st first /fərst/
2nd second /ˈsɛkənd/
3rd third /θərd/
4th fourth /fɔrθ/
5th fifth /fɪfθ/
6th sixth /sɪksθ/
7th seventh /ˈsɛvənθ/
8th eighth /eɪtθ/
9th ninth /naɪnθ/
10th tenth /tɛnθ/
11th eleventh /ɪˈlɛvənθ/
12th twelfth /twɛlfθ/
13th thirteenth /ˌθərˈtinθ/
14th fourteenth /ˌfɔrˈtinθ/
15th fifteenth /ˌfɪfˈtinθ/
16th sixteenth /ˌsɪksˈtinθ/
17th seventeenth /ˌsɛvnˈtinθ/
18th eighteenth /ˌeɪˈtinθ/
19th nineteenth /ˌnaɪnˈtinθ/
20th twentieth /ˈtwɛntiəθ/

**b** **7.22** Now listen and repeat the ordinal numbers from 21st–31st.

21st twenty-first /ˌtwɛnti ˈfərst/
22nd twenty-second /ˌtwɛnti ˈsɛkənd/
23rd twenty-third /ˌtwɛnti ˈθərd/
24th twenty-fourth /ˌtwɛnti ˈfɔrθ/
25th twenty-fifth /ˌtwɛnti ˈfɪfθ/
26th twenty-sixth /ˌtwɛnti ˈsɪksθ/
27th twenty-seventh /ˌtwɛnti ˈsɛvənθ/
28th twenty-eighth /ˌtwɛnti ˈeɪtθ/
29th twenty-ninth /ˌtwɛnti ˈnaɪnθ/
30th thirtieth /ˈθərtiəθ/
31st thirty-first /ˌθərti ˈfərst/

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words and look at the numbers (1st, 2nd, etc.). Say the numbers.

p.46

# Activities

Vocabulary Bank

**8.11** Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



buying clothes /ˈbaɪɪŋ kloʊz/



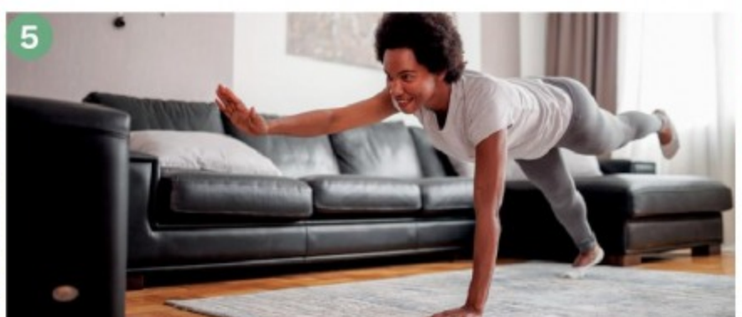
camping /ˈkæmpɪŋ/



cooking /ˈkʊkɪŋ/



riding a bike /ˈraɪdɪŋ ə baɪk/



doing yoga /ˈduɪŋ yoʊgə/



eating out /ˈitɪŋ aʊt/



flying /ˈflaɪɪŋ/



going for a walk /ˈgoʊɪŋ fər ə wɔk/



going to the movies /ˈgoʊɪŋ tə ðə ˈmuviz/



painting /ˈpeɪntɪŋ/



reading /ˈridɪŋ/



running /ˈrʌnɪŋ/



shopping /ˈʃɑpɪŋ/



singing /ˈsɪŋɪŋ/



sleeping /ˈslipɪŋ/



swimming /ˈswɪmɪŋ/



traveling /ˈtrævəlɪŋ/



watching TV shows /wɑtʃɪŋ ti ˈvi ʃoʊz/

**ACTIVATION** Cover the activities and look at the photos. Say the activities.

p.50

# Clothes

**a** **9.12** Listen and repeat the words.

1 sweater /ˈswɛtər/
2 T-shirt /ˈti ʃərt/
3 shirt /ʃərt/
4 pants /pænts/
5 jeans /dʒinz/
6 shorts /ʃɔrts/
7 suit /sut/
8 dress /drɛs/
9 skirt /skərt/
10 coat /koʊt/
11 jacket /ˈdʒækət/
12 socks /sɑks/
13 sneakers /ˈsnikərz/
14 shoes /ʃuz/
15 hat /hæt/
16 cap /kæp/

**b** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the words.

**ACTIVATION** Work in pairs. Ask about other students: *What's he wearing? What's she wearing?*

p.57


















# Hotels

Vocabulary Bank

## 1 In a hotel room

**10.2** Listen and repeat the words.

1 a closet /ˈklɑzət/
2 a shower /ˈʃaʊər/
3 the bathroom /ˈbæθrum/
4 a light /laɪt/
5 a towel /ˈtaʊəl/
6 a bathtub /ˈbæθˌtʌb/
7 a toilet /ˈtɔɪlət/
8 a lamp /læmp/
9 a table /ˈteɪbl/
10 the floor /flɔr/
11 a bed /bɛd/
12 a pillow /ˈpɪloʊ/
13 a remote control /rɪˌmoʊt kənˈtroʊl/

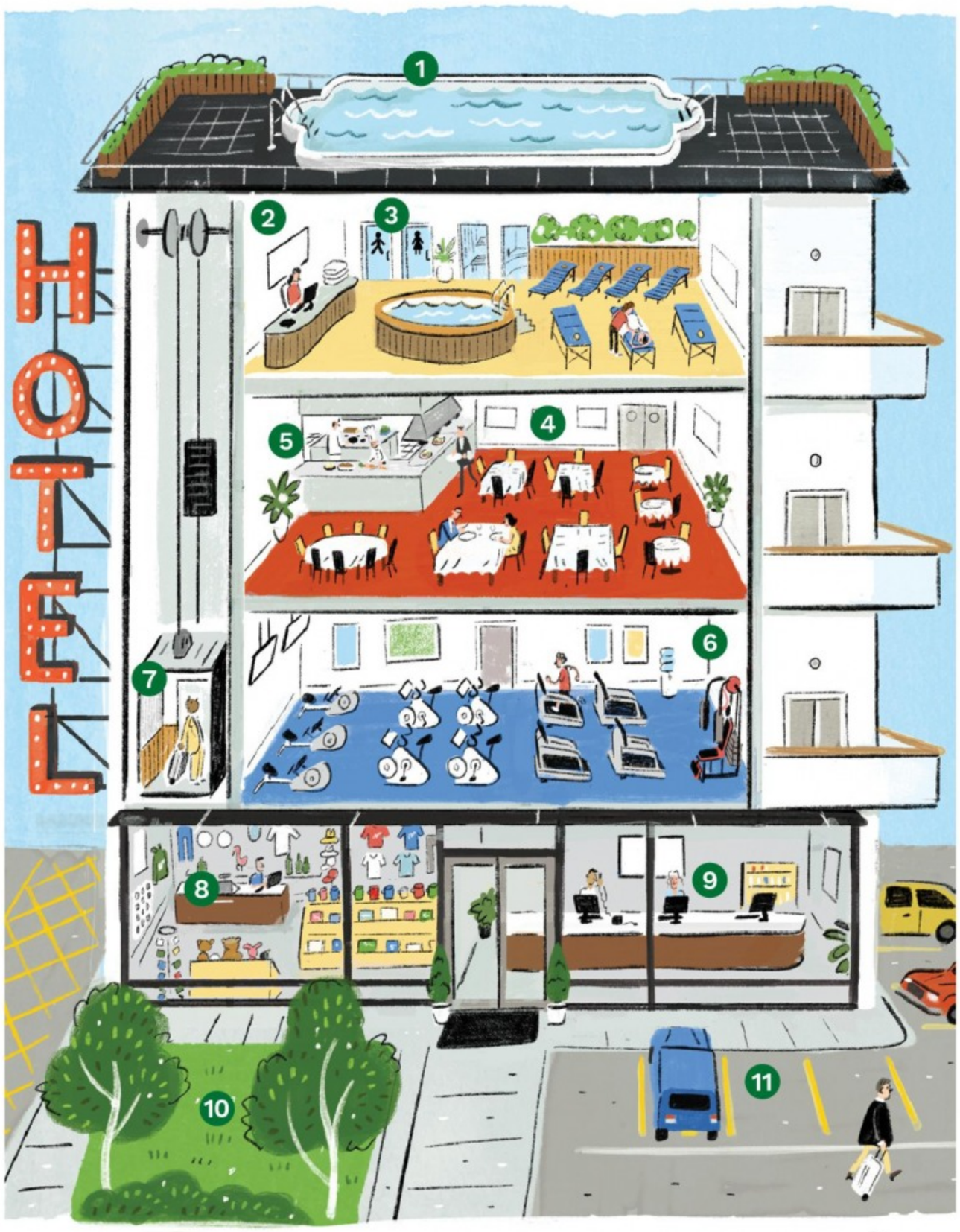


**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the words.

## 2 In a hotel

**a** **10.3** Listen and repeat the words.

1 a swimming pool /ˈswɪmɪŋ pul/
2 a spa /spɑ/
3 restrooms /ˈrɛstˌrumz/
4 a restaurant /ˈrɛstəˌrɑnt/
5 a kitchen /ˈkɪtʃən/
6 a gym /dʒɪm/
7 an elevator /ˈɛləˌveɪtər/
8 a gift shop /ˈgɪft ʃɑp/
9 reception /rɪˈsɛpʃən/
10 a yard /yɑrd/
11 a parking lot /ˈpɑrkɪŋ lɑt/



**b** Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the words.

**ACTIVATION** Practice with a partner. Ask and answer.

*Where's the swimming pool?*

*It's on the fifth floor / rooftop.*

***first floor***
the floor of a building at street level

***rooftop***
the outside part of the roof of a building

p.60

# Words and phrases to learn

## Files 1&2

**2.26**

### 1A

Hello.
Hi.
What's your name?
Nice to meet you.

A cappuccino, please.
A tea.
Yes.
No.
OK.
Thanks.
Sorry.
Just a minute.

Goodbye. / Bye.
See you on Friday.
See you tomorrow.

### 1B

Where are you from?
I'm from Spain.
Where's Buenos Aires?
I think it's in Argentina.
It's a nice city.

I don't know.
Very good.
Wow!

### 2A

Excuse me.
Are these seats free?
Are you on vacation?
We're here on business.
What's that?
Have a nice day!
It's a beautiful city.
tourists
dogs
over there

### 2B

Who's he?
How old is he?
He's very good-looking.

How are you?
I'm fine.
This is Alex.
That's my bus.
This is my bus stop.

What class are you in?
What's your phone number?
See you later.

a bedroom
a kitchen
a yard

big
small

## Files 3&4

**4.22**

### 3A

Oh no!
Where's my phone?
Where are my glasses?

What is it?
What are they?

It's an ID card.
They're keys.

What's in your bag?
I have two credit cards.

### 3B

How much is this mug?
How much are these key chains?
They're twenty dollars.
A T-shirt, please.

Is this your cell phone?
Thank you very much.
You're welcome.

souvenirs
here
there

### 4A

Come in.
Be good.
Let's order pizza.

on the table
in my phone

Mom
Dad
a babysitter

What a nice card!
Can I see?
I remember.
maybe

### 4B

sir
ma'am

an electric car
a sports car

easy to park
perfect

in her (my, your,...) opinion
Is the car for you?
I prefer that red car.
I love it!
Come with me.

a museum
a village
famous

## Files 5&6

**6.18**

### 5A

a scientist
a doctor

sometimes
usually

I'm not hungry.
early
healthy
traditional
important
different
favorite

in a café
at home
at work

soup
green tea
toast
a lot of (fruit)

### 5B

a writer
a taxi driver
an American (a British) company
a flight
traffic
a gate

in college
in high school

Do you want fish or pasta?
How's your pasta?
I need to go to the restroom.
What time do we arrive?
Keep the change.
Can I see your passport and boarding pass, please?
What a nice surprise!

### 6A

What does she do?
Where does he work?
She's a journalist.
She doesn't wear glasses.
Her hair's blond.
He's married to Laura.

Great to see you.
intelligent
interesting
I love your shoes.

a banker
customers
dishes
a multinational company
meetings

Why? Because...

### 6B

Are you a morning person?
What time do you get up?
At eight o'clock.
He gets up at about 9:30.
feel tired

on the way to work
after work
every morning
then

a tour guide
an apartment
the subway
an omelet

It's delicious.

## Files 7&8

**8.16**

### 7A

percent
do the same thing
fun
exciting
at home

a restaurant
a supermarket

it depends
more or less
except
definitely

### 7B

a movie director
an actor
a scene

Be quiet.
Don't cry.
Don't move.
Don't say anything.
I don't remember.
What about?

next to
nothing

### 8A

a driver's license
a written test
a driver's test
a driving instructor

take a test
pass
fail
learn to drive
start the car

nervous
Total disaster!

I'm free on Monday.
Yes, of course.

# Words and phrases to learn

### 8B

horrible
peaceful
frightened
alone
at parties
concentrate
very loudly

## Files 9&10

**10.17**

### 9A

a living room
the box office
traffic
noise
jacket
hear
honey

half an hour
towards
outside

Are you sure?
Have a good day.
See you in 20 minutes.

### 9B

a private investigator
a case
a colleague
a client
work experience

sit at a desk
answer phone calls
investigate a problem
follow
stay awake
solve a case
missing
boring

### 10A

a tourist destination
mountain peaks
state parks
a lake
ski areas
a visitor
a boat trip
a monster
a room for tonight
a great view
Enjoy your stay.

### 10B

a robbery
a robber
a bank
a suspect
a detective

yesterday
yesterday afternoon
last night
last Friday night

a building
a luxury hotel
a business person
a guest
jewelry

## Files 11&12

**12.9**

### 11A

a designer
a national park
public transportation
a trumpet
a sports club

blueberries
abroad
cheaper than

decide
invite
offer
miss
visit
pick
return

### 11B

an early flight
an exam
a noise
eyes
an operation
a soldier
a special day
the 21st century

pretty
shave
enjoy
go to the hospital
ask somebody to marry you
get married
have a party

I'm back.
How was your day?

### 12A

a platform
a nice smell
classical music
a message
tickets for a concert
a concert hall
a seat
full
exchange
turn on a light

That's interesting.
Time to go.

# Regular and irregular verbs

## Common regular verbs

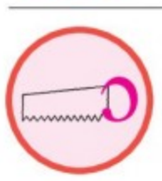
| | |
|---|---|
| answer /'ænsər/ | answered /'ænsərd/ |
| arrive /ə'raɪv/ | arrived /ə'raɪvd/ |
| ask /æsk/ | asked /æskt/ |
| book /bʊk/ | booked /bʊkt/ |
| call /kɔl/ | called /kɔld/ |
| carry /'kæri/ | carried /'kærid/ |
| change /tʃeɪndʒ/ | changed /tʃeɪndʒd/ |
| check in /tʃɛk 'ɪn/ | checked in /tʃɛkt 'ɪn/ |
| clean /klin/ | cleaned /klind/ |
| close /kloʊz/ | closed /kloʊzd/ |
| cook /kʊk/ | cooked /kʊkt/ |
| cry /kraɪ/ | cried /kraɪd/ |
| decide /dɪ'saɪd/ | decided /dɪ'saɪdəd/ |
| finish /'fɪnɪʃ/ | finished /'fɪnɪʃt/ |
| hate /heɪt/ | hated /'heɪtəd/ |
| help /hɛlp/ | helped /hɛlpt/ |
| invite /ɪn'vaɪt/ | invited /ɪn'vaɪtəd/ |
| learn /lərn/ | learned /lərnd/ |
| like /laɪk/ | liked /laɪkt/ |
| listen /'lɪsn/ | listened /'lɪsnd/ |
| live /lɪv/ | lived /lɪvd/ |
| look /lʊk/ | looked /lʊkt/ |
| love /lʌv/ | loved /lʌvd/ |
| miss /mɪs/ | missed /mɪst/ |
| move /muv/ | moved /muvd/ |
| need /nid/ | needed /'nidəd/ |
| offer /'ɔfər/ | offered /'ɔfərd/ |
| open /'oʊpən/ | opened /'oʊpənd/ |
| pack /pæk/ | packed /pækt/ |
| paint /peɪnt/ | painted /'peɪntəd/ |
| park /pɑrk/ | parked /pɑrkt/ |
| pass /pæs/ | passed /pæst/ |
| play /pleɪ/ | played /pleɪd/ |
| rain /reɪn/ | rained /reɪnd/ |
| relax /rɪ'læks/ | relaxed /rɪ'lækst/ |
| rent /rɛnt/ | rented /'rɛntəd/ |
| snow /snoʊ/ | snowed /snoʊd/ |
| start /stɑrt/ | started /'stɑrtəd/ |
| stay /steɪ/ | stayed /steɪd/ |
| stop /stɑp/ | stopped /stɑpt/ |
| study /'stʌdi/ | studied /'stʌdid/ |
| talk /tɔk/ | talked /tɔkt/ |
| travel /'trævl/ | traveled /'trævld/ |
| turn /tərn/ | turned /tərnd/ |
| use /yuz/ | used /yuzd/ |
| wait /weɪt/ | waited /'weɪtəd/ |
| walk /wɔk/ | walked /wɔkt/ |
| want /wɑnt/ | wanted /'wɑntəd/ |
| wash /wɑʃ/ | washed /wɑʃd/ |
| watch /wɑtʃ/ | watched /wɑtʃt/ |
| work /wərk/ | worked /wərkt/ |

## Common irregular verbs

| | |
|---|---|
| be /bi/<br>am /æm/ / is /ɪz/<br>are /ɑr/ | **was** /wʌz/<br>**were** /wər/ |
| buy /baɪ/ | **bought** /bɔt/ |
| do /du/ | **did** /dɪd/ |
| get /gɛt/ | **got** /gɑt/ |
| go /goʊ/ | **went** /wɛnt/ |
| have /hæv/ | **had** /hæd/ |
| leave /liv/ | **left** /lɛft/ |
| say /seɪ/ | **said** /sɛd/ |
| see /si/ | **saw** /sɔ/ |
| send /sɛnd/ | **sent** /sɛnt/ |
| sit /sɪt/ | **sat** /sæt/ |
| tell /tɛl/ | **told** /toʊld/ |
| write /raɪt/ | **wrote** /roʊt/ |

# Vowel sounds



| | usual spelling | ! but also |
|---|---|---|
|  **tree** | **ee** three meet<br>**ea** please read<br>**e** she we | people key<br>piece |
|  **fish** | **i** his six is it<br>big window | English<br>women gym |
|  **ear** | **eer** cheer<br>**ere** here we're<br>**ear** near year | cereal |
|  **cat** | **a** bag thanks<br>man black<br>bad that | |
|  **egg** | **e** spell ten seven<br>twenty Mexico | friend bread<br>breakfast |
|  **chair** | **air** airport repair<br>**ere** where there | their careful |
|  **clock** | **o** not hot stop<br>hospital | what watch<br>want |
|  **saw** | **al** talk walk<br>**aw** saw draw<br>awful | daughter<br>water<br>bought |
|  **horse** | **or** short important<br>door | four board |
|  **boot** | **oo** too food<br>**u*** excuse blue<br>**ew** new | juice two<br>you |
|  **bull** | **u** full sugar<br>**oo** good book<br>look cook | woman<br>could |
|  **tourist** | A very unusual sound.<br>euro Europe sure<br>plural | |

| | usual spelling | ! but also |
|---|---|---|
|  **up** | **u** umbrella<br>number brush<br>husband but | son brother<br>young |
|  **computer** | Many different spellings, always unstressed.<br>umbrella America famous about children | |
|  **bird** | **er** person verb<br>**ir** thirsty girl<br>**ur** nurse turn | work word<br>world |
|  **car** | **ar** are park<br>start far | heart |
|  **owl** | **ou** out house<br>pound sound<br>**ow** town down | |
|  **phone** | **o*** open close<br>no hello<br>**oa** coat | window |
|  **train** | **a*** name late<br>**ai** email Spain<br>**ay** day say | eight they<br>great |
|  **boy** | **oi** toilet noise<br>**oy** boyfriend<br>enjoy | |
|  **bike** | **i*** I hi nice<br>**y** bye my<br>**igh** night right | buy |

* especially before consonant + e

vowels  vowels followed by /r/  diphthongs

# Consonant sounds



| | usual spelling | ! but also |
|---|---|---|
|  **parrot** | **p** paper Peru<br>sleep top<br>**pp** stopped happy | |
|  **bag** | **b** board British<br>remember job<br>**bb** hobby | |
|  **key** | **c** color credit card<br>**k** look take<br>**ck** back clock | school |
|  **girl** | **g** go green<br>big blog<br>**gg** eggs | |
|  **flower** | **f** fifteen Friday wife<br>**ph** photo phone<br>**ff** office different | |
|  **vase** | **v** TV very<br>have live<br>seven five | of |
|  **tie** | **t** time tell<br>start late<br>**tt** letter butter | liked<br>finished |
|  **dog** | **d** did drink<br>study good<br>**dd** address middle | played<br>cried |
|  **snake** | **s** sit stand<br>**ss** glass business<br>**c (+ e / i)** cent city<br>**ce ending** nice place | science |
|  **zebra** | **z** zero Brazil<br>**s** bags cars<br>husband easy | |
|  **shower** | **sh** shop she<br>Spanish finish<br>**ti (+ on)** information<br>reservation | sugar<br>sure |
|  **television** | **An unusual sound**<br>usually usual | garage |

| | usual spelling | ! but also |
|---|---|---|
|  **thumb** | **th** thing think<br>tenth birthday<br>month Thursday | |
|  **mother** | **th** the father<br>this their<br>that | |
|  **chess** | **ch** children lunch<br>**tch** watch kitchen<br>**t (+ure)** picture | |
|  **jazz** | **j** Japan juice<br>job<br>**dge** bridge | gym<br>page |
|  **leg** | **l** lamp listen<br>plan table<br>**ll** small umbrella | |
|  **right** | **r** red rice<br>problem street<br>**rr** terrible married | write<br>wrong |
|  **witch** | **w** watch twenty<br>word we<br>**wh** what white<br>where | one |
|  **yacht** | **y** yellow your<br>yes you<br>**before u**<br>music university | |
|  **monkey** | **m** museum Monday<br>September come<br>**mm** summer swimming | |
|  **nose** | **n** nine never<br>men fine<br>**nn** beginner dinner | know |
|  **singer** | **ng** thing single<br>doing going<br>playing wrong | think<br>thank |
|  **house** | **h** hello hi<br>how he<br>have hotel | who |

voiced  unvoiced

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2026

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

e-Book Edition

ISBN: 978 0 19 417043 7

First published in 2026

**No copying or file sharing**

This digital publication is protected by international copyright laws. No part of this digital publication may be reproduced, modified, adapted, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, used for text and data mining, or used for training artificial intelligence, in any form or by any means, to any other person or company without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not modify, adapt, copy, store, transfer or circulate the contents of this publication under any other branding or as part of any other product. You may not print out material for any commercial purpose or resale

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims all and any responsibility for the content of such websites

The manufacturer's authorised representative in the EU for product safety is Oxford University Press España S.A. of El Parque Empresarial San Fernando de Henares, Avenida de Castilla, 2 – 28830 Madrid (www.oup.es/en or product.safety@oup.com). OUP España S.A. also acts as importer into Spain of products made by the manufacturer.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

*The authors would like to thank all the teachers and students around the world whose feedback has helped us to shape* American English File.

*The authors would also like to thank*: all those at Oxford University Press (both in Oxford and around the world) and the design team who have contributed their skills and ideas to producing this course.

*Finally very special thanks from Clive to Maria Angeles, Lucia, and Eric, and from Christina to Cristina, for all their support and encouragement. Christina would also like to thank her children Joaquin, Marco, and Krysia for their constant inspiration.*

*The publisher and authors would like to thank Jane Hudson for her work on the Review and Check pages, Writing Bank, and Grammar Bank.*

*The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce photographs*: 123RF (Liubov Shirokova, Tatiana Popova, zentilia); Alamy (agefotostock, Album, Andreas von Einsiedel, Andrew Twort, Artem Merzlenko, B Christopher, Barry Mason, BFA/Columbia Pictures, blickwinkel, Cathy Topping, chutima kuanamon, CNMages, Connect Images, Creative Control, D. Hurst, Dale O'Dell, David Taljat, Denis Michaliov, Design Pics Inc, Digifoto Diamond, Elvira Sabelnikova, Esa Hiltula, Everett Collection Inc, FoodFood, Foto Arena LTDA, Frank Bienewald, Frank Sanchez, Gerhard Beneken/doc-stock , Iakov Filimonov, Image Source Limited, Image Source Plus, imageBROKER, Images, Jack Carey, Jan Tadeusz/ Alamy, Jeff Greenberg , Jeffrey Blackler , JIPEN, JLImages, Judith Collins, Juha Jarvinen, Juice Images, Justin Kase z12z, Konstantinos Moraitis, Kumar Sriskandan, Manor Photography, Marek Kosmal, MAXPPP, Mike Abbot, Mint Images, Mint Images Limited, Moviestore Collection Ltd, musk, Nalinratana Phiyanalinmat, National Geographic Image Collection, Nick Moore, NurPhoto SRL, O Kemppainen, Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography, Patti McConville, Perry van Munster, Peter Titmuss, Picture Partners, Picturebank, Piotr Skubisz, Prostock-studio, roberthardin, Rolf Richardson, Rtimages, Sergio Azenha, Steve Barnett, Terese Loeb Kreuzer, ton koene, UpperCut Images, Valentyn Volkov, VDWI Automotive, Visions of America, LLC, Wavebreak Media Premium, Wavebreakmedia, Westend61, World Discovery, XiXinXing, Zoonar GmbH, Zuma Press); Corbis (Corbis, I love images/Corbis); Getty Images (Alex Davies/Contributor, Alex Davies/FilmMagic__, Andersen Ross/Blend Images, andresr, Andrew Holt Collection/Photographer's , Andy Sacks, AscentXmedia, AzmanL, Bloomberg, Caspar Benson, Christopher Hope-Fitch, cokada, Cultura/Chris Whitehead, Cultura/Zak Kendal, Dave J Hogan/Contributor, Education Images, efired, Egyptian, Eleganza, EvgeniyShkolenko, fongfong2, Fuse, GEN UMEKITA, Getty/Stuart Burr, Handout/ Handout, Henrik Sorensen, Hill Street Studios, Hispanolistic, iStock/Getty Images Plus, Jon Lovette, Jordi Salas, Jose Luis Pelaez Inc, Julius Kliucinskas, Jupiterimages, Jupiterimages/The Image Bank, Justin Paget, Karwai Tang, Kawee Srital-on, Kelly Cheng Travel Photography, Ken Ishii/Getty Images AsiaPac, Kevin Dodge, Klaus Vedfelt, Kobus Louw, LauriPatterson, lbusca, Lyndon Stratford, Martin Hospach/Getty, Maskot, Max Mumby/Indigo, mcsilvey, MixMedia, Mondadori Portfolio/Contributor, Monty Rakusen/Cultura, Nikada/E+, NurPhoto, Oliver Strewe_/Lonely Planet Images, Peter Cade/Iconica, Photodisc/Getty, piterimages/ Photolibrary, Rafael Elias, Robert Daly/OJO Images, Roberto Westbrook, robtek, SolStock, South_agency, standret, Stefka Pavlova/Moment Open, sturti, Tadamasa Taniguchi, Tatiana Maksimova, Thomas Barwick, vgajic, Victor VIRGILE/Gamma-Rapho, Westend61, Yagi-Studio, Yellow Dog Productions); Oxford University Press (Dominic Latham-Koenig, Getty/Donald Erickson/Collection E+__, Hannah Donat, Oxford University Press, Photodisc, Photolibrary, photolibrary.com, Photosync/Shutterstock, Sean Pavone/Alamy); Shutterstock (Aaron Amat, Abramova Elena, adehoidar, Africa Studio, AJR_photo, Akimov Igor, akita2011, Alexey Fedorenko, Amero, Andres Serna Pulido, Andresr, Andrey_Kuzmin, Andrey_Popov, Andrii Kobryn, Anele Nova, Ann Kosolapova, ANNVIPS, Anton-Burakov, AridOcean, Artem Varnitsin, aslysun, Azovtsev Maksym, Bell nipon, BigPixel Photo, bonchan, Boontheang, Born_Rich_japan, Boyko.Pictures, Brandon Woyshnis, Brent Hofacker, burnel1, Carolina Bello, Catarina Belova, Celso Pupo, Charles Lewis, chayanuphol, chrisbrignell, chrisdorney, Christian Jung, Christophe Testi, cjmacer, Claudio Divizia, Col Pics/Everett, Columbia/Kobal/ Shutterstock, Connect Images – Curated, ConstantinosZ, Cookie Studio, Cookie Studio, Critterbiz, Cultura Motion, Dave Allen Photography, David Fuentes Prieto, David Tadevosian, DC Studio, De Repente, Dean Drobot, Debby Wong, Dmitry Kalinovsky, dotshock, dvoevnore, earth phakphum, Elena Gordeichik, elenovsky, elenovsky, Elnur, Erik Laan, ESB Professional, Etaphop photo, Evgen3dstudio, Fashion iconography, FCG, fizkes, Framesira, Galina Savina, Gayvoronskaya_ Yana, Gorodenkoff, gresei, Ground Picture, Guguart, Gyvafoto, Halfpoint, HLPhoto, HU Art and Photography, Hussein Satrio, Iasha, Ice_AisberG, IgorGolovniov, ikrolevetc, Image Broker, Inspiration GP, Inspired By Maps, insta_photos, INTREEGUE Photography, isak55, IVASHstudio, Jack Jelly, jannoon028, Javidestock, jazz3311, JessicaGirvan, Jesus Cervantes, JLauer, JOHN O' REILLY, Jon Le-Bon, Jonathan Weiss, Joshua Resnick, Kamenetskiy Konstantin, Karin Hildebrand Lau, Karkas, Kim Nguyen, Korenevych Nataliia, kornn, Kseniia Perminova, Kudryashova Alla, Kusalodom, Kuttelvaserova Stuchelova, Laborant, leungchopan, LightField Studios, Lightkite, liseykina, Lucasfilm/Fox/Kobal/REX/Shutterstock, Lucky Business, Luis Molinero, M. Unal Ozmen, MaddyZ, Magdalena Wielobob, magedb.com, mama_mia, MariaLev, Maridav, Marija Stojkovic, MarinaP, Marvel Studios/Kobal/Shutterstock, Matej Kastelic, mates, Mateus Andre, Matthew Dixon, Melinda Nagy, mentatdgt, merzzie, Miljan Zivkovic, mimagephotography, Monkey Business Images, Nadino, NadyaEugene, Nata-Lia, Natalia Fesiun, Natasha Kramskaya, NatashaPhoto, New Africa, New Line/Kobal/REX/Shutterstock, Nopphon_1987, Odua Images, Ola chahrour, OlgaGi, Oliver Hoffmann, Ollyy, OZaiachin, Ozgur Coskun, Ozymandian, Pabkov, pablopicasso, panpote, Paul Maguire, PeopleImages.com – Yuri A, Peter Kotoff, Peter Versnel, Philip Date, Photographee.eu, Photolan, pics721, PintoArt, pio3, Pixel-Shot, pp.77LSK, Prostock-studio, psirob, Rafal Olechowski, rahayudandelion, Ratthaphong Ekariyasap, rawisoot, Reddogs, RikoBest, Robert Kneschke, RobSimonART, Roman Samborskyi, rookie idea, Rose Carson, Ryan DeBerardinis, RYO Alexandre, S.Borisov, Satyrenko, Scharfsinn, Sea Wave, Sean Pavone, ShotPrime Studio, Sky Antonio, SmileStudio, Sodel Vladyslav, Sonate, Stanislav Makhalov, Stephen Coburn, stockfour, StockImageFactory.com, stocksolutions, surachet khamsuk, Teri Virbickis, ThomasDeco, Tijana Simic, Tim UR, Tim UR, TobinCStudio, Tono Balaguer, Toto Santiko Budi, Turkan Rahimli, Twin Sails, Ukki Studio, ust2shutter, V_E, Valentyn Volkov, Victor Velter, ViDI Studio, Vlad Teodor, VTT Studio, Wavebreakmedia, WAYHOME studio, Winai Tepsuttinun, windu, withGod, Xavier Lorenzo, Yeko Photo Studio, Yganko, YURALAITS ALBERT, Zamrznuti tonovi).

*Commissioned photography by*: Gareth Boden

*Pronunciation chart artwork by*: Ellis Nadler

*Illustrations by*: Ben Swift/NB Illustration; Claire Rollet; Clementine Hope/NB Illustration; Ester Zirelli/Astound; Javier Joaquin/Beehive Illustration; Jo Bird/Jelly London; Jon Fletcher; Laura Perez/ Anna Goodson Illustration; Oxford University Press; Q2A Media; Simon Clare; Stephen Collins; Wan Norazura/Astound.

*Video stills by*: Digeo Productions Ltd.; MM Studios; Oxford Digital Media.

*Integrated videos by*: Digeo.

*The publisher would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs*: Alamy 3A.1 (Identity card, Media for Medical SARL); Getty Video 9B.1 (Cyclist in red t-shirt, EMS-FORSTER-PRODUCTIONS), (woman wearing green trousers, freemixer); Getty Images 3A.1 (Purses, Mark Williamson) 10A.1 (tourists on train,Luis Alvarez),(Dorm room, Elliott Kaufman); Pond5 1B.1 (Changing of the guard, Vicfilm),(Carnival Rio De Janeiro, vinnikava),(Great wall of China, TheCoverStory),(Gondolier in Venice, stockfootagecom),(Traditional Turkish Coffee, Mazurkevich),(Luxor Temple,Merlin74) 2B.1 (No. 32 bus, BlackBoxGuild),(No. 43 bus,MaddieRedPhotography),(No. 65 bus, BlackBoxGuild),(No. 87 bus, MacNab_St_Films),(No. 59 bus, krblokhin),(No. 24 bus, flyandvisit),(No. 98 bus, BlackBoxGuild) 5A.1 (Supermatket timelapse, TLukassek),(picking up orange juice, Wifesun),(Potatoes, luminance),(Shelves of pasta, Pippocarlot),(Supermarket bread, Nordroden),(Chocolate in supermarket, Framarzo),(Bagged salad, shadowspeeder),(Butter and cheese in supermarked, olegdoroshenko),(Assorted meat counter, Sia_Media) 7A.1 (playing piano, mindstormphoto),(People at the cinema, icatnews),(Hiking in the mountains, LuAleks),(running on treadmill, Gorodenkoff),(Woman swimming in lake, stockbusters),(Couple walking to the beach, HangtimeMedia),(Airport checkin, vidstockuk),(Games controller, filomedi) 8B.1 (two women in shopping mall, OKIOKIME),(Painter, silverkblack),(Swimming pool, Sandsun),(man sleeping on sofa, blendimages),(Woman doing yoga, filomedia),(man setting up tent, Peopleimages),(Cooking, zidi) 9A.1 (eating breakfast, philipimage),(Man taking shower, anut21ng),(Woman in gym, kryvoshapka),(Couple cleaning house, JackF),(Catch watching t.v, zelwanka),(Listening to music, SunPhotography),(Reading book in park, mrTommy),(eating orange, MaZvone),(Man drinking coffee, Wavebreak_video),(Woman learning English, ivan_kuprevich) 9B.1 (Woman wearing a yellow coat, monkeybusinessimages),(Man in suit on phone, supamotion),(Young Woman In Black Dress And Hat,vimpro); OUP DAM 2B.1 (No. 78 bus, Shutterstock/Nelson Antoine),(No. 19 bus, Shutterstock/Velvet Gold 1) 3A.1 (Charger for Smartphone, inspire finder),(Rainbow umbrella, Shutterstock/LeManna),(Row of bikes, Shutterstock/Lane V. Erickson),(men's and women's watches, Shuterstock/MchlSkhrv) 4A.1 (Hispanic teenager, Jenkedco),(man with glasses, AJR_photo),(Portrait of a man, Connect Images / Alamy Stock Photo),Mature female by window, PeopleImages.com - Yuri A),(man in pink shirt, AshTproductions),(boy in pink hoodie, Shutterstock/Asier Romero),(Girl with long brown hair, Shutterstock/mentatdgt),(woman in coffee shop, Shutterstock/Monkey Business Images),male teacher in school, Shutterstock/ Monkey Business Images),(attractive brunette woman, Shutterstock/goodluz),(Teacher in Front of Blackboard, Design Pics) 4B.1 (Green scarf,Shutterstock/Adisa),(Brown sugar, Chursina Viktoriia) 8B.1 (Marathon runners, Shutterstock/Rick Ray),(Couple walking dog, Shutterstock/Igor Sirbu) 9A.1 (Family eating dinner, Shutterstock/PRPicturesProduction),(Train station platform, Shutterstock/Hadrian) 10A.1 (Autumn tree in park, Shutterstock/S.Borisov),(Shopping mall, Shutterstock/andreyspb21),(Lecture hall, Shutterstock/vectorfusionart); Shutterstock Video1B.1 (Bateau Mouche tour, JeanLucIchard),(Tokaido Shinkansen running on Mt Fuji, tackune),(Day of The Dead Parade in Mexico City, BlackBoxGuild),(Cooking a giant Paella, ElevenStudio),( Drone orbits above Machu Picchu,BlackBoxGuild),(Grand Canyon, Hangtime Media), (Floating market, mtp26), (Luxor temple, Merlin74) 5A.1 (looking at bag of rice, reefa3),(Supermarket shelf dairy, Felix Mizioznikov), (Cereal on supermarket shelf, Sheila Fitzgerald),(Taking milk out of fridge, dmitriylo),fresh fish, Olga Dzhoshkuner) 7A.1 (Friends meet over coffee, fizkes),(playing tennis, footagefirst), (Family walk in city park, Gonchar Evgeny) 8B.1 (Sunset cyclists/Flystock)(Choir singers, Pavel L Photo and Video), (Plane taking off, Zhorov Igor) 9B.1(Private detective, Lysenko Andrii),(Woman wearing red skirt, Viktor Lom),(Runner with pink hat and trainers, Vladyslav Starozhylov),(Blonde woman in yellow coat, oes), (Young Woman In Black Dress And Hat,vimpro); Shutterstock Images 1B.1 (World map, Viacheslav Lopati) 3A.1 (Tour buses await passengers, Korelidou Mila),(Pair of Red and Brown Chairs, Olga Pink),(Mixed biometric passports, Sergey Shik),(lined notebook, Wut_Moppie),(Blank paper on wood table, Evgeny Karandaev),(two double hung windows, Dolores M. Harvey) 4A.1 (woman with long brown hair, pixelheadphoto digitalskillet) 4B.1 (Two black cats,Viktor Sergeevich),(Plain White T-Shirt, Yada's Room),(New york cabs, 365 Focus Photography),(Two trees, Viacheslav Lopatin),(Green sunglasses, evgeeenius ), (Orange mug, Kabardins photo),(gray duffle bag, Rawpixel.com),(red pens, Vadarshop),(blue boots, Kucher Serhii),(Pink umbrella, Parsha), (Daschund, James player) 8B.1 (Women doing yoga, filomedia ), (Plane taking off, zhorov Igor) 9B.1 (viewfinder screen, Vector Tradition),(DSLR camera, iunewind), 10A.1 (taking picture of breakfast, Dean Drobot),(Passengers on bus, DimSan),(Lutece Street with views of Sainte Chapelle, Right Perspective Images),(cucumbers and vegetables, porti),(Woman taking selfie in bed, Xavier Lorenzo).